

2997

[Bradford, William], 1658-1752.

The Secretary's Guide.

New York and Philadelphia, 1728. [10], 192 pp.

LOC copy.

The Secretary's Guide;
O R,
Young Mans Companion,

In Four Parts.

Part I. Contains Directions for Spelling, Reading and Writing True *English*, with true Pronunciation.

Part II. Arithmetick made easie, and the Rules thereof Explained and made familiar to the Capacity of those that desire to Learn.

Part III. The Method of Writing Letters upon most Subjects; as from one Friend to another, as well as Trade, Traffick or other Occasions.

Part IV. Contains a choice Collection of Bills of Parcels, Bills, Bonds, Letters of Attorney, Indemnities, Bonds of Arbitration, Awards, Umpirages, Deeds of Sale, Deeds of Gift, Assignments, Leases and Releases, Counter Securities, Declarations of Trust, Bills of Exchange, Charter party of Affreightment, with many other useful Presidents, Profitable both for Old and Young to Learn and Know.

This Fourth Edition is much Enlarged.

The whole, Adorned with Variety of other Matters, as will appear by the Contents.

Printed and Sold by *W. Bradford* in *New-York*,
and *A. Bradford* in *Philadelphia*, 1728.

To the R E A D E R.

Kind Reader;

IT is now above thirty years since I first compiled this short Manuel, during which time several Impressions have sold off, and each time it has been Reprinted, it has been enlarged, and now this fourth Edition, thou wilt find many Additions, in order to make it more useful than heretofore. And the going off of the former Editions are a better Argument of the Usefulness of the ensuing Book, than any Recommendation a Preface could give. However, I will adventure to Recommend it as Useful and Necessary in these *American* Parts, where Books of this Nature are not frequently to be got, and will dare to say, that Elder People, as well as the Youth, may receive benefit and Advantage by it, by instructing them not only in *True Spelling and Reading true English*, with the Rules of *Arithmesick*, but also you have the Copies of Letters upon most Subjects. And *lastly*, This small Treatise will supply you with *Forms and Presidens* of most sorts of *Legal Writings* that the Country has occasion for, ready drawn up to your hands, and save you the Charge not only of a Lawyer, Scrivenier, or one that understands these Matters, but also Time and Expenc

(a)

To the R E A D E R.

Expence in Travelling to seek such a Person ; and likewise enables the Country-man to do that Business himself which may not be proper for others to know, but to be kept private.

But not to detain the *Kind Reader* with a long Preface, I Recommend him to the perusal of the several subject Matters contained in the following Sheets, which if they prove Profitable and answer the Readers Expectation, I shall be satisfied, and 'twill encourage us to Collect and Publish some other useful Matters that may be further Advantageous to the Country in general, and the better enable the diligent to perform their several Callings, Professions and Employments which Providence may allot to every of us. I am,

Kind Reader,

Thy Real Well-Wisher,

W. B



Lately Published, the Book, entitled,

Conductor Generais, or *The Office, Duty and Authority of Justices of the Peace, High-Sheriffs, Under-Sheriffs, Gaolers, Coroners, Constables, Jury-men, Overseers of the Poor.* And also, *The Office of Clerks of Assize, and of the Peace.* Collected out of the Books hitherto written on these Subjects, whether of Common or Statute-Law. To which is added, *A Collection out of Sir Matthew Hales concerning the Descent of Lands.*

Printed and Sold by *William Bradford* in New-York, and sold by *Andrew Bradford* in Philadelphia.

THE CONTENTS

PART I.

OF Letters, great and small, and when each are to be used,	page 1, 2.
Their Division into <i>Vowels</i> and <i>Consonants</i> ,	pag. 3, 3.
Of <i>Diphthongs</i> , what they are, how many, and how Pronounced and Written,	P. 3, 4, 5.
Of <i>Syllables</i> , and Rules how to divide them,	p. 6.
Of Letters that ought to be Written, and yet not <i>Sounded</i> , and the Reasons thereof; particularly of the Letter <i>(e)</i> at the end of a Word, vwhen it <i>must</i> , and vwhen it <i>should</i> not be Written,	p. 10.
A Table of Words vvhich are <i>a-like in Sound</i> , but <i>different in Signification</i> ,	p. 16.
Of Points and Stops,	p. 21.

PART II.

Arithmetick made Easie, &c.

OF Numeration,	p. 31.
Of Addition,	p. 34.
Of Subtraction,	p. 44.
Of Multiplication,	p. 48.
Of Division,	p. 52.
Of Reduction,	p. 56.
	The

The CONTENTS

The Rule of Three,	p. 58.
A Table for Buying and Selling any thing by the Hundred,	p. 64.
A Table of Square Timber Measure,	p. 65.
A Table shewing how many inches in length will make a Foot Solid of a round piece of Timber,	p. 66.
A Table of Round Measure,	p. 67.
Of Gauging of Vessels,	p. 69.
A Table of Interest, at 8 per Cent.	p. 71.
The Rates of Post Letters in North America,	p. 72.
A Table of Interest at 4 per Cent,	p. 73.
Of Women,	p. 74.
Of Children,	p. 76.
Of Servants,	p. 77.
Of Religion,	p. ibid.

PART III.

Instructions for Writing and Inditing of Letters.

A Letter from one at School to his Father,	p. 87.
Another from one at School to his Friend,	p. ibid.
A Letter of Entreaty from a Son to a Father,	p. 88.
A Letter from a Schollar to his Parents,	p. ibid.
A Letter of Intreaty from a Daughter,	p. 89.
A Letter of Intreaty to continue Abroad,	p. ibid.
A Letter of Excuse to a Father and Mother,	p. 90.
A Sons Return of Thanks for good Education,	p. ibid.
A Letter of Thanks for a Kindness received,	p. 91.
A Letter of Thanks to a Mother,	p. 92.
A Letter of Thanks returned for the Advancement of a Person,	p. 93.
A Letter of Advice to a Friend,	p. ibid.
Another,	p. 94.
A Letter of Recommendation,	p. ibid.
The Answer,	p. ibid.

CONTENTS.

A Letter of Congratulation from a Son to a Father, upon his Recovery from Sickness,	p. 95.
A Letter to a Friend,	p. 96.
A Letter requiring the Payment of Money, which serves as an Acquittance,	p. 96.
An Answer to the last Letter,	p. 97.
A Daughters Letter of Intreaty to her Mother,	p. 97.
The Answer,	p. 98.
A Letter from an Apprentice to his Father,	p. 98.
A Letter from an Apprentice to his Master,	p. 99.
A Letter from a Young Man newly out of his Time,	p. 99.
A Letter from a Young Man to his Mother, to acquaint her with his Marriage,	p. 100.
Another from a Young Woman,	p. 100.
A Letter of Congratulation from a Youth to his Sister, upon her Marriage,	p. 101.
The Answer,	p. 101.
A Letter to request a Kindness,	p. 102.
The Answer,	p. 102.
A Letter from a Husband to his Wife,	p. 103.
The Wifes Answer,	p. 103.
A Letter from one Sister to another, to enquire of Health, &c.	p. 104.
The Answer,	p. 104.
A Letter requiring the Payment of Money,	p. 105.
A Letter for Goods,	p. 105.
A Letter of Trade and Commerce,	p. 106.
A Letter of Credit,	p. 106.
A Letter written to Reclaim Youthful Extravagancies, &c.	p. 107.
A Letter from a Gentleman, excusing a Son, to his Father,	p. 107.
A Letter to Congratulate a Person upon his Return out of Foreign parts, or from a long Journey,	p. 108.
A Letter from a Country Chapman to a Person he deals with in the City,	p. 108.
A Letter from a Person at Sea, to his Friend on Shoar,	p. 109.
A Letter from one Gentlewoman to another,	p. 109.

The CONTENTS.

A Letter from a Gentleman to a Gentlewoman, to beg Pardon for an Offence,	p. 109.
The Answer,	p. 110.
A Letter to a Lady, desiring admittance into her Presence,	p. 111.
The Ladys Answer,	p. 112.
A Letter to a Widow, on the Death of her Husband,	p. ibid.
Instructions for External and Internal Super of Letters,	p. 114.
Subscriptions, and other necessary Matters for the Reader to Learn and Understand,	p. 116.

PART IV.

Containing Instructions for making such Legal Writings as are generally used.

A Merchants Bill of Parcels, vvith proper Receipts,	p. 118, 119.
A Carpenters Bill, a Bricklayers Bill, and a Smiths Bill, vvith proper Receipts,	p. 119, 120, 121.
An Acquittance for Rent,	p. 121.
A Servants Receipt for Rent,	p. 122.
Receipts in full of all Accompts,	p. ibid.
A short Bill of Debt,	p. 123.
A short Bill vvith a Penalty,	p. ibid.
A Penal Bond, vvith the Condition,	p. 124.
The Condition of a Bond for the Payment of a Sum of Money at several Time,	p. 125.
The Condition of an Obligation from Two Persons to One, and from One to Two, and from Two Persons to Two,	p. 126.
Legal Directions concerning Arbitration,	p. 127.
A Bond of Arbitration, vvith the Condition,	p. 128.
A Condition of a Bond of Arbitration, vvith a Clause for an Umpire,	p. 129.

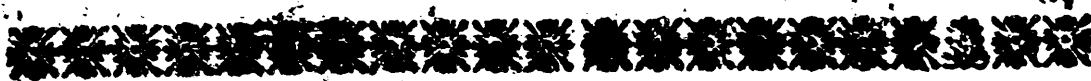
The

The CONTENTS

The Form of an Award,	p. 131.
The Form of an Umpirage,	p. 132.
Observations thereon,	p. 133.
A Condition of a Bond to perform Covenants, Specified in a Lease of Indenture,	p. 135.
A Condition of a Counter Bond to save harmless,	p. ibid.
A Discharge proper to be given upon the Receipt of a Legacy,	p. 136.
A Counter Condition to save Bail Harmless,	p. 137.
A Condition to Marry a Person, or pay, &c.	p. ibid.
A Condition to pay back part of a Legacy, if any Debt of the Testator shall after appear to be unpaid,	p. 138.
A Condition to give Account and render the Stock delivered: or one vvho is to carry on a Trade at half Profit	p. ibid.
A short Assignment of a Bond,	p. 139.
A larger Assignment of a Bond,	p. 140.
A Declaration of a Bond, made in a Third Persons Name upon Trust,	p. 141.
The Explanation of a Bond,	p. ibid.
The Form of a Bill of Sale for Goods,	p. 142.
A Sale of Lands, by Lease and Release,	p. 143.
A Lease of a House,	p. 146.
An Assignment of a Lease,	p. 148.
An Assignment of Rent, reserved upon a Lease,	p. 149.
Observations upon a Lease,	p. 150.
An Exchange of Lands,	p. 151.
A Letter of Attorney,	p. 152.
A Letter of Attorney to receive Rents,	p. 154.
The Form of Revoking a Letter of Attorney,	p. 155.
An Indenture of an Apprentice,	p. ibid.
A Letter of Licence usually granted, allowing Time to a Debtor that cannot make present Payment,	p. 156.
A Condition that an Heir shall make no Claim,	p. 158.
A Release to be given by a Ward to his Guardian, vvhen he comes of Age, if he has truly Discharged his Trust, and rendred a faithful Account,	p. ibid.
The Form of a General Release,	p. 159.
The Copy of a Will,	p. 160.
	Rules

The CONTENTS

Rule worthy of Observation in Matters relating to Wills and Testaments,	p. 161.
A Counsel to a Will.	p. 163.
The Form of a Administrators Account,	p. 164.
A Covenant to pass Money lent upon Bottomrey,	p. ibid.
A Charter-part of Affreightment, Of Exchange,	p. 166.
Form of Bills of Exchange,	p. 169.
The Protest of a Bill of Exchange,	p. 171.
A Bill of Sale for a Vessel,	p. 172.
A Denunciation of Trust,	p. ibid.
A Debarance on Lands forfeited,	p. 173.
A Defiance on Lands forfeited,	p. 174.
A brief Relation of the Kingdom of England,	p. 275.
Of America,	p. 182.



PART I.

Directions for Spelling, Reading, and Writing True English.

Of Letters *great and small, and when each
are to be Used; Their Division into
Vowels and Consonants: Of Diph-
thongs, what they are, how many, and
how Pronounced and Written.*

THERE is no Building without a
Foundation. Therefore whoever would obtain
the Accomplishment of Writing all sorts of En-
glish Words properly, and Scholarlike, must, in the first
Place, endeavour to understand *Letters*, whereof all
Words are composed.

These are in Number *Twenty four*, and are to be con-
sidered in their *Form*, their *Nature*, and their *Force*.

1. As to their *Form*, Letters are either *Small*, as *a, b, c, &c.*
or *Great* (which are called *Capital*) as *A, B, C, &c.* And
to know when rightly to use the one, and when the other,
is the first step towards good *Clerkship*; wherein this
Rule will guide you.

B

You

Directions for Spelling

You must never use Great Letters in the middle, or end of any Word (unless the whole be wrote so, as LORD) but always in the beginning: And there too; only in these six Cases following, viz. 1. At the beginning of any Writing. 2. After every Period, or Full-Point, when a new Sentence commences. 3. At the beginning of every Line in Poetry, and every Verse in the Bible. 4. Proper Names of all sorts, whether of Persons, Places, or Things, and the like, must begin with them. 5. So also the Names and Terms of Arts, Dignities, Offices, or any other Word of special Note in a Sentence; or to which we pay a particular Deference; As God, King, your Lordship, &c. And lastly, The Personal Pronoun I; must always be a Capital. The small Letters are every where else to be used.

It would therefore be highly ridiculous to write thus:

master george francklin the coroner of kent, with dorothy his wife, came last march 10 london, where i met him.

When it should be,

Master George Franklin, the Coroner of Kent, with Dorothy his Wife, came last March 10 London, where I met him.

Note, There are two Forms of s used in writing; the long *f*, which is always put in the beginning, or middle of Words, and the short *s*, which only comes in the end, or after another *f*; As *substantial*, *Assessments*; not *substantial Assessments*.

Note also, That *i* and *u*, for reasons which we shall mention by and by, are oft-times written thus, *j*, *v*.

As to the Nature of Letters, they are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.

The *Vowels* are commonly counted but five, viz.

a, e, i, o, u;

and Reading true English.

a, e, i, o, u; but we must add to them *y*, when it cometh after a *Consonant*.

All the rest are *Consonants*, and so are *j, c,* and *y*, when any of them come before a *Vowel*.

They are called *Vowels*, (which is as much as to say *Self-Sounders*) because each of them gives a perfect sound of it self; whereas the *Consonants* (that is, *Sounders together with*) cannot be pronounced without one of the *Vowels*: As, to say *B*, you must make use of the sound *e* after it; and in *q*, of *u*, and in *m* or *f*, of *e* before them, &c.

When two *Vowels* come together, and yet are not parted in Pronunciation, but the sound of them both united, it is called a *DIPHTHONG* [that being originally a Greek Word, signifying a *Double Sound*] As heard, *fusset*, *People*; not *be-ard*, *swe-et*, *People*.

Of these *Diphthongs* we have *Twelve* that are chiefly to be observ'd; that is to say, *ai, ei, oi, au, eu, ou, au, ou, ea, eo, oa*, and *ie*: As in these Words, *Faith, Either, Join, Aul, Enuch, Stout, Seed, Food, Wealth, People, Beat, Friend*.

Where you may observe, that in the *first fix*, both *Vowels* are fully sounded; but in the *last*, one of the *Vowels* is but little, or scarce at all heard; and therefore by some they are called *improper Diphthongs*.

Note, That *ay, ey, oy*, are also *Diphthongs*, and have the same sound with *ai, ei, oi*; only *these* are used in the beginning or middle of Words, *those* always in the end; so we write, *air, fair*. *Heifer, either, Cleyster*, not *ayr, fayr, eyther, Cloyster*; but *Moy, Joy, Whey*, &c. not *Mai, Joi, Whei*.

Aw, ew, ow, are likewise *Diphthongs*, and have the same sound with *au, u,* and *ou*, save that *these* are used chiefly in the end of Words. And *ow* is sounded flat and soft; as *A Bow, to morn*; whereas *ou* is more sharp and shrill, as *Thou, you, adieu*. Yet, contrary to

Directions for Spelling

this Rule, we do commonly write these Words following of a sharp sound, with *ow*, viz. *To Bow, A Cow, Flower, Fowl, How, Power, Sow, Vowel*. Again, on the other side, we write some with *ou*, and yet pronounce them as flat as the sound of *ow*, in *know*, viz. *Fear, Soul, drought*. But certainly it is an Inconveniency, that Words under one and the same manner of Writing, should have a double and different Sound: To remedy which, some preferring *Reason* before corrupt *Custom*, use *ou* where ever the Sound is soft and flat, either in the beginning, middle, or end of a Word; but *ow* where it is sharp: And write thus:

I want Strength to bow this Bow.

Do you mow the Grass, and I will lay it up in the Mow.

The Pease I sow to Fat the Sou, not the Cou. Hou can I make up the Hop-Garden without a How? Others distinguish them by adding e, As Jane is an ill-bred Sow, and cannot sowe.

But I take the other writing to be more natural.

Æ and *œ* (which have peculiar Characters, viz. *Æ* and *œ*) are not properly *English Diphthongs*, but *Latin*, and therefore we in *English* do, for them, commonly both write and sound the single *e*. As *Equity, Female, Phenix, Tragedy*, from *Æquitas, Fœmina, Ploenix, Tragedia*. Yet, in borrowed Words, of rare use, and especially in proper Names, as *Æneas, Ætna, Œconomy, &c.* The best Authors use the *Diphthongs*, to denote their Original.

Question. *When two Vowels come together, Is it always a Diphthong?*

Answer. No, not always; but generally where any of the before-mentioned Pairs of *Vowels* happen together, they make a *Diphthong*, and must be sounded jointly, except in these Words following:

as are parted in *Beatitude, Create, Creator, Creation, Genealogy,*

Reading true English

Gentility, Ocean, Pagan, Real, Serjeant, Thane, Vengeance.

And *ei* in *Atheist, Atheism, Deity, Polytheism.*

Eo is a Diphthong in *Dungeon, Hidden, Meteor, Pigeon, Scutcheon, Surgeon, Theory.*

Oa are severed in *Co-action, Co-adjutor.*

Ie is parted in *Audience, Brier, Buried, Baked, Clothier, Diet, Drier, Effet, Gaiety, Laity, Moiety, Quia, Studied.*

Ui are parted in *Ambiguity, Fruition, Genuine, Gratuity, Puissant, Perspicuity.*

Ee in *Pre-eminence, Pre-emption, Re-enter, Re-edify.*

Oi in *Doing and Going.*

Likewise, most *Vowels* that come together like *Diphthongs*, are parted in all proper Names of Persons or Places mentioned in the *Bible*, As *La-ish, Abhe-us, Cesare-a, Gilbe-at, Abime-am, &c.* save only *Cain, Caiman, Theudas, Ruben, and Beelzebub*, where the *Vowels* are sounded together as *Diphthongs*.

In all such Words where two *Vowels* come together, they are to be parted, that they may not seem to make a *Diphthong*. If you would write exactly, you ought to make this Mark .. over the latter *Vowel*, which is called *Diaeresis*, or a Note of Partition, thus *Laiety, Capernaum, Gilead, &c.* Tho' this, thro' the Negligence of Printers and Writers, is often omitted.

There are some few Words derived from *French*, where three *Vowels* are joyn'd in one sound; as *Lieutenant, Beauty, &c.* which may be called *Triphthongs*.

Note, That altho' we have but 24 Letters, and six of them *Vowels*, yet we have 21 *Consonants*; For *I, U* and *Y*, when they are set before any *Vowels* in the same Syllable, do become *Consonants*. And in such a Case, the two former must be Written with a different Character from that which they have when they are *Vowels*, viz. *j* and *v*, (which by Learned Men and Printers, are called *Join* and

Directions for Spelling

And *Vo* for *je* as *je* *je* *je*, *je* *je*, *je* *je*, *je* *je*; not *je* *je*, *je* *je*, *je* *je*, which would be uncouth and absurd; ~~therefore~~ this is to be carefully observed. And in such a case I know no need of a Tittle over *j*, which yet you must always make over *i*.

And tho' *y* keeps one and the same Form, yet whereas, (when 'tis a Consonant,) it differs much from *j* Consonants. As may be perceived by these Examples — *jet*, *yet*, *jew* *you*, *joke*, *yoke*.

I being Originally a Greek Vowel, is rightly used, 1st. In most Words derived from that Tongue; As *Chrysal*, *Prestyer*, *Martyr*, *Apocrypha*, *Apocalyps*. 2. English Words that end with the sound of *i*, may be indifferently writ with a *y*, or *ie*; as *Safety* or *Safetie*, *Beauty* or *Beautie*, but you must never end them with an *i* only, as *Beauti*, *Safeti*, for we have no English words so terminated. 3. When two *i*'s come together, *y* is put in the place of the former, because it looks handsomer; as *Burying*, *Marrying*, (not *Burrying*, *Marryeing*, nor *Burrying*, *Marrying*) and sometimes when *e* followeth, as *Marryeth*, *Prayeth*.

Of Syllables, and Rules how to divide them.

IT is very necessary both for True Writing and Reading, to understand the Nature and proper Division of Syllables.

A Syllable is either a Vowel, or Diphthong, sounding by it self, or joined with one or more Consonants in one sound, and pronounced at one Breath.

For since each of the five Vowels makes a perfect Sound, any of them may be, and often is a Syllable, as *a-bace*, *e-re-ry*, *i-vie*, *o-pin-ion*, *u-sit-ris*. So most of the Diphthongs, as *au-ger*, *Eu-flace*, *ou-ger*, *ai-der* *oi-fler*, *ea-ton*, *ea-ton*.

Many

Orthography and English.

Many Consonants with one Vowel may make but one Syllable; as Length, Strength, Knight.

1. Rule, If two Vowels come together in a Word, and yet are no Diphthong, but both fully sounded, they must be divided, as in *Di-et*, *Mu-tu-al*, *Tri-umph*, *Co-eternal*, *Co-equal*.

2. Rule, If the same Consonant be doubled in the middle of a Word, they must be divided; as in *Ab-ba*, *Ac-cord*, *Ad-der*, *Af-fect*, *Ag-gra-vate*, and the like.

3. Rule, A Consonant coming between two Vowels, must be joined to the latter; as in *E-quit-ty*, *De-liver*; not *Eq-uit-ty*, *Del-iver*.

4. Rule, Two Consonants between two Vowels do separate themselves, one to the former, the other to the latter Syllable; as *Stran-ger*, *For-tune*.

But to these general Rules, there are these Exceptions following.

First, *x*, in any Word, must be joined to the Vowel before it, contrary to the third Rule; as *Ox-en*, *Ex-ercise*.

The Reason is, because 'tis a double Consonant, and has the sound of *c* and *s*, which cannot begin a Syllable, For,

Secondly, Any two or three Consonants, which may be joined to begin any English Word, are not to be separated in the middle of any Word; so you must not spell *ag-ree*, *be-tow*, *re-frain*, &c. but *a-gree*, *be-tow*, *re-frain*, because *gr*, *st*, and *fr* do begin several English Words, as in the following Example.

The two Consonants that may begin Words, are *Th* and *Number*, &c.

As in *Bl. Blue*. *Br. Broad*. *Ch. Church*.
Cl. Clock. *Ce. Cross*. *Dr. Drink*. *Dw. Dwell*.
Fl. Flame. *Fr. Frank*. *Gl. Glove*. *Gn. Gnaw*.
Gr.

Directions for Spelling.

Gr. Greave. Kn. Know. Pl. Play. Pr. Pray.
 Sc. Starr. Sh. Shut. Sk. Skin. Sp. Sport.
 St. Stop. Sl. Slow. Sm. Smiles. Sn. Snow.
 Sq. Squib. Sw. Sway. Th. Thunder. Tr. Treasure.
 Tw. Two. Wh. Whistle. Wr. West.

The three Consonants that may begin a Word, are these
 Nine, viz. Sch. School. Scr. Scrape. Shr. Shrink.
 Skr. Skrew. Spl. Split. Spr. Spring. Str. Stroke.
 Thr. Threw. Thw. Thwart.

All these must be spelt together, and not separated,
 except in compounded Words; and there each simple
 Word must retain its own Letters. As

Mis-take Mis-like Mis-lead Dis-lodge Dis-close Dis-miss	} not	Mi-stake Mi-slike Mi-slead Di-sdodge Di-sclose Di-smiss	So Trans-pose, not Tran-spole, because 'tis Compounded of <i>trans</i> . So Cramp-ring, not Gram-pring.
--	-------	--	---

So likewise all Words that remain intire, when their
 Propositions and Terminations, (which of themselves
 signify nothing) are taken away from them, must be spelt
 by themselves, as *stand-ing*, not *stan-ding*; *reclaim-ed*, not
reclai-med, *un-ex-pect-ed*, not *u-nex-pec-ted*.

Thirdly, Any Consonant joined with l, or r, before e,
 in the end of a Word, is inseparable; as in the very
 Word *in-se-pa-ra-ble*, *tri-ple*, *Mi-tre*.

Fourthly, This Particle *es*, at the end of Words (which
 are commonly either Nouns of the Plural Number, or
 Verbs of the Third Person) is sometimes swallowed up of
 the foregoing Syllable, and serves only to make it long;
 but sometimes it makes a Syllable of it self.

Note, A Noun is the Name of a Thing, A Verb is a
 Word

Reading true English!

9

Word that betokeneth to do, or to suffer, or to be. The *singular* Number speaks but of one, the *plural* of more. The *first Person* is when a Man speaks of himself, as, *I come*. The *second* when one speaks to another, as, *Thou comest*. The *third*, as, *He comes* or *cometh*.

In these Words following it closes with the former Syllable.

	Nouns.	Verbs.
An Hide,	<i>Hides,</i>	he <i>hides</i> himself.
A Drake,	<i>Drakes,</i>	he <i>bakes</i> Bread.
A Bile,	<i>Biles,</i>	he <i>piles</i> up Wood.
A Name,	<i>Names,</i>	he <i>names</i> me.
A Bone,	<i>Bones,</i>	he <i>moans</i> and weeps.
A Rope,	<i>Ropes,</i>	he <i>ropes</i> with.
A Wire,	<i>Wires,</i>	he <i>tires</i> all Men.
A Brute,	<i>Brutes,</i>	he <i>suits</i> well with it.
A Way,	<i>Waies,</i>	he <i>staies</i> for me.
An Eye,	<i>Eyes,</i>	he <i>ties</i> in wait.
A Virtue,	<i>Virtues,</i>	he <i>argues</i> well.

But in these it may be a Syllable by it self.

A Grace,	<i>Graces,</i>	he <i>plains</i> all things.
A Church,	<i>Churches,</i>	he <i>lurches</i> Conies.
A Cage,	<i>Cages,</i>	he <i>wages</i> War.
An Hedge,	<i>Hedges,</i>	he <i>judges</i> none.
A Rose,	<i>Roses,</i>	
A Nose,	<i>Noses,</i>	he <i>poses</i> Scholars.
A Fish,	<i>Fishes,</i>	he <i>refreshes</i> himself.
A Witness,	<i>Witnesses,</i>	he <i>oppresses</i> the Poor.
A Box,	<i>Boxes,</i>	he <i>foxes</i> his Guests.
Affize,	<i>Affizes,</i>	he <i>freezes</i> for Gold.

Note, That these Verbs, are, by the Curious, written with an *Apostrophus*, as *Refresh's*, for *Refresheth*, or doth *Refresh*, especially when the *Verb* and the *Noun* are both alike, to distinguish them, as, he *bide's* himself amongst the

the *Hides*. For otherwise it seems needless to write an *apostrophe* where *s* is set for *th*, as *Love's* for *be Loveth*; there being nothing omitted, only the *th* (which in sound is but one Letter) is changed into *s*.

Es is also sounded in these Words, *Alors*, *Jubiles*, *Epitomes*; and in all proper Names, as *Moses*, *The-res*, *Martha-tes* except *James*.

If these Rules for dividing of Syllables seem too tedious and intricate, a little practice and observation will render them easy and familiar: In the mean time take this for a general Direction, *That Syllables are so to be divided in Spelling as they are in Speaking*. And be sure if you cannot write a whole Word at the end of a Line, break it off at the end of a Syllable; as for Example, *Communi-* in one Line, and *cation* in the next, not *Communic-* in one Line, and *ation* in the next; so if I should write *discharge* at the end of a Line thus, *dis-charge*, it would be ridiculous, for if I could not bring it in all, I ought to have left off after *dis*, and began the next Line with the other Syllable.

Of Letters that ought to be Written, and yet are not Sounded, and the Reasons thereof; particularly of e at the end of a Word, when it must, and when it should not be Written.

IN the Words *Isaac*, *Caiaphas*, *Canaanite*, *Sabaot*, and *Pharao*, one of the *e's* is not pronounced, they being originally *Hebrew*.

And *b* after *m*, in Words of one Syllable, are not sounded, as in *Lamb*, *Climb*, *Comb*, *Dumb*, *Tomb*, *Womb*, *Thumb*, And before *t*, as *Debt*, *Debtor*, *Doubt*.

And *e* is not sounded in *Indict*, *Indictment*, *Indicted*. Nor *u* in *Wednesday*. Nor *e* in the middle of the Word *George*.

George. And *e* at the end of a Word is very seldom sounded, except in those of one Syllable, as *Ma, he, she, he, ye, we,* where it has the sound of a Diphthong, or *ea*. And in Words derived from the Hebrew and Greek, as *Jeſe, Jubile, Honour, Nimro, Candace, Char, Daphne, Gethſemene, Penitency, Epitome, Cataſtrophe, &c.*

In other Words where *e* is put at the end, and the Sound not heard, yet it is not ſuperfluous, nor to be omitted in Writing, for theſe following Reaſons :

1. It ſerves to draw the Syllable long, which without muſt be ſounded ſhort, and ſo ſeveral Words of different Senſe would be confounded, which by this means are plainly diſtinguiſhed, as appears by theſe Examples.

To Curſe and Ban is Childrens Bane.

A Hedger's Bill is no fit Inſtrument wherewith to hew a Bile.

You may Bite one Bit of my Apple.

I did Bathe my ſelf in a Bath.

I can break this Japan Cane.

A Scolding Dame deſerves to be duckt in the Mill-Dam;

Meat that is fetcht far is Ladies fare.

A piece of Fir is good for the Fire.

I am out of Hope to have one Hop this Year.

They ſay a Cat has nine Lives, but to be ſure ſhe will Live as long as ſhe can ſee me alive.

Bad uſage has made many a Man mad.

Let the Man cut my Horſe's Mane.

'Tis two Miles to the next Mill.

I will quit and diſcharge you quite of that debt.

To Rid the way let's Ride the faſter.

The Poor will Scrape up every Scrap.

I cannot Stare all Night at a Star.

For a new Tune I get a Tun of Wine.

Oft-times one Twin doth twine about the other.

For a Pint of Wine you do not Win.

Are you not aſham'd to Whine for a Scratch with a Whip, or a Furz Buſh?

I will Write to my Lawyer for a Wit

Nay, this *e final* does not only draw out the *Syllable* after one *Consonant*, but sometimes effects the same after two; as in *Finde, Minde, Winde, Rinde, Binde, Waste, Taste, Tithe, Childe*, which therefore ought to be so written.

Yet these following Words seem priviledg'd by Custom, to be pronounc'd long, without an *e* in the end, *viz.* *Bald, cold, hast, post, told, scold, belt, Golt, dols, most, Ghost, both, Ruth*; but if any should add an *e* to them, tho' it might seem *unfashionable*, I could not blame him, because 'tis but reasonable: But in other Words 'tis a self-contradiction to add *e* in the end, which makes a *Syllable* long, after I have made it short with two *Consonants*; and therefore I must write, *pass, turn, black*; not *passé, turne blacke*.

2. Another Reason for writing *e final* when not sounded, is to soften the sound of these two Letters, *c* and *g*, as in *Acc, place, lice, truce, Justice*; whereas otherwise *c* sounds strong, like *k*, as in *ac-cept, ac-count*, and the like of *g*, as in *stag and stage, bug and huge, swing and swinge, string and fringe*.

And here Note, That if *g* be hard with a long Vowel, *ue* is added, and always pronounc'd in the same *Syllable*, as *Plague, Rogue, Prague, the Hague, Intrigue, Catalogue, Dialogue, Prologue, Epilogue, Synagogue, Collegue, Prorogue, League, Tongue*. Beware that you do not read such Words *Catalo-gue, Intri-gue*, nor write them *Catalog, Prolog, &c.*

But if *g* be short, with a short Vowel, then it must have *d* before it, as in *badg, ledg, bridg, lodg, judg*, which Words are thereby differenced both in Sound and Writing, from *bag, leg, log, jug*.

3. Another use of *e* at the end of Words, is for Ornament, rather than Necessity; for so we add it to Words ending in *i, o, or u*, as *Charitie, Vertue, Foe, Toe*, where it does not vary the Sound, except after *i*, and there it makes the *Syllable* sound more gently, like the *Diphthong ee*, as *Charitie* is pronounc'd, as if it were written *Charitee*. Likewise in *Nouns* and *Verbs* singular, 'tis generally added after the long *s*, joined with another *Consonant*; as *Herse, Cuisse,*
to

to *Nurse*, *Disburse*: for we do not use to write *Hurf*, *Disburs*, *Curf*, much less *Hors*, *Disburs*, *Nurs*; and I take the reason to be partly because those Words are thereby the more readily varied; As *Nurse*, *Nurses*; *Curf*, *Curseth*; *Disburse*, *Disburses*. And especially because the short *s* after *r*, without an *e*, makes a soft Sound, as *Wars*.

If to *e* at the end of a Word, a long Vowel be added, the *e* is lost, and must be omitted in Writing, as *love*, *loving*, not *loveing*; *have*, *having*, not *haveing*; except these endings *ge* and *ce*, before *able*, as *change*, *change-able*; *peace*, *peace-able*; not *chan-ga-ble*, *pea-ca-ble*.

It is needless to use *e* at the end of a Syllable already made long by a Diphthong, and therefore you must write, *gnaw*, *fear*, *weight*; not *gnawe*, *feare*, *weighte*; except when it is to give a right sound to soft *s*, soft *th*, and to these endings, *ce*, *ge*, *ve*; as *please*, *soothe*, *peace*, *siege*, *leave*.

Words of one short Syllable, ending with a Consonant, are to be written with a single Consonant; and without any *e* after; as *fin*, *son*, *sm*, *at*, *put*, *war*; not *finne*, *sonne*, *sunne*, &c. altho' such Words are so writ in our old Bibles, and after the same manner in the Plural, *finnes*, *sonnes*, &c. But this is reform'd in our later Impressions.

6. *G* is not sounded, tho' written, in *Sign*, and its Compositions, *Assign*, *Resign*, *Design*, *Consign*; nor in *Seignior*, *Reign*, *Sovereign*, *Arraign*, *Pblegm*, and the like.

7. *H* has Place, but no Voice, in *Authority*, *Christ*, *Christopher*, *Chrystal*, *Chrysostom*, *Chronicle*, *Chronology*, *Chronography*, *Ghost*, *John*, *Rhide*, *Rhenish*, *Rhetoric*, *Schedule*, *Schism*, and *Thomas*.

8. *I* is not much, if at all, sounded in these Words, *Adieu*, *Juice*, *Pursuit*, *Bruit*, *Fruit*, *Suit*, *Bruise*; yet in the five last, it draws the Syllable long.

9. *K* is not heard in *Back*, *Deck*, *Sick*, *Rock*, *Back*, &c. for the Latines made the same sound with *c* alone, as *Lac*, *Nec*, *Dic*, *Hec* *Duc*; and our best Authors do now write such Words, when deduced from the Greek or Latine, in *ous*, with *c* only, as *Public*, *Physic*, *Catholic*. But if the Word

Word come from the *Latin*, ending in *que*, you must write *que*, as *oblique* of *obliquus*, *Relique* of *Reliquus*, *antique* of *antiquus*; and *fabricus* and *artificus* from the *French*.

10. *N* is not pronounc'd in *Selma*, *Hymn*, *Autumn*, *Column*, *Condense*, &c. yet ought to be written, because it shews whence they are deriv'd.

11. *O* is not sound'd in *People*, *Woman*, *Jeopardy*, *Passion*, nor in the end of *Righteous*, *Glorious*, *Privileged*, and the like.

12. Not *S* in the Words *He*, *Viscount*, *Island*.

13. *U* is written many times after *g*, when it has no Sound; as *Guide*, *Guardian*, &c. and always after *q*; as in *Queen*, *Quick*, and the like. In the Words *Buy*, *Build*, *Condole*, *Circuit*, 'tis also *U*; and so also in *Labour*, *Farmer*, *Honour*, and other Words of like ending.

I have been the longer upon this Rule, that my Young Learner may have full and plain Instructions, in relation to the true knowledge of the Sound of those Letters which ought to be Written, and particularly the Letter *e*, which, tho' the second *Vowel*, affords more variety of Instruction, than any of the other: So that by following carefully the Observations I have made, the Learner will know when this significant Letter must, or must not be written at the end of a Word.

Of Letters sound'd alike, and how to avoid Mistakes in writing one for the other.

C And *K*, they have great Affinity in Sound, but to distinguish when you ought to use one, and where the other; Observe,

That *C* hath the force of *K* only before *a*, *o*, *co*, *u*, and these two Consonants, *l* and *r*. And therefore you must write *Care*, *Cow*, *Cooper*, *Capboard*, *Clergy*, *Crown*; not *Kare*, *Kow*, *Keeper*, *Kapboard*, *Klergy*, *Krown*. But
before

before *c* and *k*. *C* has commonly the sound of *S*; as *Cæsar*, *Cicero*, not *Kæsar*, *Kikero*. And the use of *K*, is only before *e*, *i*, and *u*; as *Key*, *Keep*, *Kill*, *Knight*; not *Cey*, *Cep*, *Cill*, *Cight*. And for this Reason too, we ought to write *Calendar*, *Gatherine*, *Catholic*; not *Kalendar*, *Katherine*, *Katholic*; altho' these two last come of Greek Words, written with *Kappa*.

In short Syllables you must write *c* before *k*, if a Vowel go before, as *Back*, *Thick*, *Stick*, and the Reason, as I told you a little before, is, because *k* is never doubled; but if a Consonant come before *k*, there is then no need of *c*, as *Banks*, *Barks*; not *Bancks*, *Barcks*.

C is to be written after *x*, in some Words derived from the Latin, as *Exceed*, *Exert*, *Excessive*; not *Exced*, *Exel*.

Ch in most English Words, or such as are derived from the French and Latin, sounds *cher*, as in *Approach*, and *Ache*, *Charity*; and if the Syllable be pronounced short, you must write *s* before the *ch*, as *Catch*, *Wretch*, *Scatchew*; but in the following Words, borrowed from Hebrew and Greek, *ch* has the sound of *k*; as in *Character*, *Dialectic*, *Chederlamer*, *Antioch*, *Escharist*, *Anchor*, *Chios*, *Cherazin*, *Chushite*, *Achan*, *Malchus*, *Melchizedec*, *Baruch*; And must be read as if they were wrote *Karacter*, *Kaderlamer*, *Ahan*, *Antiak*, *Baruk*, &c.

And the same in all other like Words, except these, *Rachel* (not *Rakel*) *Cherubim*, *Tychicus* (not *Tykicus*) *Archbishop*, *Archduke*; yet these two Words, *Architect* and *Archangel*, are pronounced as if they were spelt *Arhitest* *Arkangel*, and the Reason I conceive to be, because in the two last, a Vowel, but in the former, a Consonant follows.

F and *ph* will not be mistaken, if it be remembered, that the first is used in all English Words, as *face*, *find*, &c. The latter in these few following, derived of the Greek and Hebrew.

Phanatick
Phantasy

Phlebotomy
Phlegm

(for

Directions for Spelling

(for which yet we commonly use *F* and *s*)

Pharaoh

Phrensy

Pharisee

Phrenetic

Pharez

Physic

Phoenix

Physician

Phibre

Physiology

Philistines

Triumph, not Trinitie

Philosophy

Beware therefore of writing these Words with an *f*, for it were equally as absurd to see *Filosophy*, *Physician*, as it would be to behold *Phastine*, *Prind*, *Phigere*, instead of *fastning*, *find*, *figure*.

G in the end of some few Words where *ss* or *ss* goes before, has the Sound of *f*, as *Laugh*, *Cough*, *Tough*, *Enough*, wherein the *s* loses its Sound; yet have a care you do not make your Readers sport by writing *Laff*, *Coff*, *Taff*, and *Saff*; because Custom has not yet allowed thereof; yet *Cuff*, *Snuff*, *Huff*, *Buff*, &c. must be so written.

G before *e* and *i* is sounded soft like *j* Consonant, as *Agent*, *George*, *Gentle*, *Gem*, *Generosity*, *Generation*, *Gender*, *Genealogy*, *Geometry*, *Gesture*, *Giant*, *Ginger*, *Clergy*, *Gipsy*, *Imagine*, Do not play the Fool, and write *Ajent*, *generation*, *jinger*, &c. Yet we must write *Ajax*, *January*, *Janizaries*, *jealous*, *jest*, *John*, *joy*, not *gcalous*, *Gabe*, *geer*.

C has many times the Sound of *s*; To distinguish them take these Rules:

1. You must write *c* before *e* or *i*, in *Accept*, *Special*, *Circumcision*, *Exceed*, being Words derived from the Latin, wherein *c* must be retained.

2. Words that end with the Sound of *ace*, *ice*, *ice*, *ace*, are generally wrote with *c*; as *Mace*, *piece*, *Live*, *induce*, So also Words in *ance*, *cace*, *ince*, *once*, *ance*, *ancy*, or *ency*; as *Countenance*, *Prudence*, *Quince*, *Sconce*, *Dance*, *Lieutenancy*, *Continence*; not *Countenants*, *Continensy*, or the like, Except out of this Rule these Words:

Abase	To Advise	To Advertise
Cafe	Hypocrisy	Mirtins
Bafe	Paradise	Rinfe
Chafe	Promise	Recompense
Dispense	Frankincense	Sins
Finance	Intense	Pens
Expence		Sense.

3. Words ending in the Sound of *ose*, *use*, [long] must be wrote with *f*, as *Hefe*, *Nose*, *Abuse*, *Chuse*.

4. C. Sounds like a soft *f*, in these Words *Sacrifice*, *Suffice*, and in *Glocester* and *Worcester*, the *ce* is not at all sounded in common Speech, yet must not be left out in Writing.

5. As for the beginning of Words, these following having the Sound of *S*, must be written with a *C*.

Cease	Censor	Circle
Cieling	Centre	Circuit
Celebrate	Centurion	Citron
Celerity	Ceremony	Cite, and its Compounds
Cell	Certify	Excite, Recite, &c.
Cellar	Ceruls	City
Cement	Cistern	Civil
Censet	Cider	Civet
Censure	Cinque	Cymbal
Circumstance	Cinamon	Cypress.
Circumference	Cypher	

All other Words (as near as I can remember) of that Sound. must begin, with *f*, as *Sack*, *Senate*, *Sob*, *Sum*, &c.

6. There are seven Words (I can think of no more at present) beginning with *She*, *Sci*, *Sebe*, and *Schi*, which ought to be taken notice of, to prevent their being written wrong (as they seem to sound) with an *f* only; And they are *Scene*, *Scepter*, *Schedule*, *Schism*, *Science*, *Sciatica*, *Scythians*; which you must read as if they were wrote, *Scene*, *Septer*, *Sedal*; yet *Scheme* and *Skeleton* are always sounded as *Skeme*, *Skelton*, so *Scarcity*, *Schollar*, *Scrivener*, &c.

Directions for Spelling

Ti, before a Vowel, generally sounds like *fi*, as *Patience*, *Dictionary*, except when *f* goes before, as *Fustian*, *Combustion*. And except the Word *tied*, and whenever a Word ending in *ty* hath another Syllable added to it that begins with a Vowel, as from *Plenty*, *Pious*; *Mighty*, *Mightier*.

Ti re since the same Sound is frequently to be expressed by *ty*, and sometimes by *fi*, (especially in the ends of Words) it will be worth while to understand when, and where, properly to use each, and the Reason thereof.

For your Guidance herein, Pray Observe these Directions,

1. Generally you must write *ti*, not *fi*, in Words that end with the sound of *ation*, *ition*, *action*, *ition*; except where there is a double *f*, as *Passion*, or an *sh*, as *Cushion*, *Fashion*; not *Cution*, *Fation*. But more particularly,

2, You are to know that the Reason of the different writing of such like sounding Words is this, they are all originally Latin Verbals, derived from the first Supine, which if it end in *tum*, then you write *ti*; if in *sum*, then *fi*. However because all People are not acquainted with *Supines*, I shall here set down those Words of both sorts that most frequently occur.

These are to be written with a ti.

These with an fi.

Action
Ambition
Apparition
Attention
Benediction
Compunction
Concoction
Contention
Declamation
Diffention
Distribution
Exclamation

Admission
Allusion
Apprehension
Ascension
Asperision
Aversion
Circumcision
Commission
Connusion
Conclusion
Confusion
Dismission

Faction

Faction
Friction
Injunction
Moxion
Munition
Nation, Notion
Obtation
Obligation
Perdition
Perturbation
Relation, Sanction
Toleration
Valediction
Vocanon.

Descension
Diverfion
Effufion
Evafion
Invaſion
Occaſion
Permiſſion
Submission
Viſion.
*And the like of many others,
where there is the ſame
Reaſon.*
To which you may add,
Graſter, Braſter, Viſter.

*A Table of Words, which are a like in Sound,
but different in Signification.*

A Bel, Cain's Brother.
A Bell of Metal,
Able, powerful.
Accidence, a Book,
Accidents, Chances.
Account, Esteem,
Accomp't, a Reckoning.
Achor, a Valley,
Acre of Land,
Acorn, a Nur.
Advice, Counsel,
Advise, to Council.
Ale, Malt-Liquor.
Ail, to trouble,
All, every one,
Aul to bore Holes,
Ale-hoof, an Herb,
Aloof, at a Distance,
Alley, to give hale,
Alloy, of Metal.

Alley, a narrow Passage.
Ally, Confederate.
A Lye, falſity.
Allow'd, granted,
A loud, with a Noiſe.
Altar, for Sacrifice.
Alter, to change.
Amiſs, Wrong.
A Miſs, a Whore.
Ant, Piſcite.
Aunt, Uncle's Wife
A Peal, Ringing,
Appeal to higher Power.
A Peer, Lord.
Appear, to be ſeen.
Aray, good Order.
Array, to cloath.
A Roſe, to ſmell to,
Araſe, did riſe.
Arraid, a Meſſage.

D

Arrant

Directions for Spelling,

Arrant, Notorious.
Arras, Hangings.
Arrows, to shoot.
Harrass, to trouble.
A Scent, Smell.
Ascent, going up.
Assent, Agreement.
Assistance, help.
Assistants, helpers.
Augur, a Sooth-sayer.
Augre, for Carpenters.
Axe, to cut Wood.
Acts, of Parliament.
Babel, the Tower.
Babble, to prate.
Bacon, Hogs Flesh.
Baken, baked.
Becken, to wink.
Bail, a Surety.
Bale, of Cloth or Silk.
Bald, without Hair.
Bawl'd, cry'd out.
Ball, a round Substance.
Bawl, to cry aloud.
Barbara, a Woman.
Barbary, a Country.
Barberry, Fruit.
Bare, naked.
Bear, a wild Beast.
Barrister, at Law.
Barrow, a Disturber.
Base, a part of the Neck.
Beiz, Cloth.
Bay, Bay Tree.
Be, are.
Bee, with Honey.
Beer, Malt Drink.
Bier, to carry the Dead on.

Bel, an Idol.
Bell, to ring.
Berry, a small Fruit.
Bury, to interr.
Blew, did blow.
Blue, a Colour.
Board, Plank.
Bor'd a Hole.
Boar, a Beast.
Boor, a Country Fellow.
Bore, to make a Hole.
Bold, confident.
Bowled, cast as a Bowl.
Bolt, the Door.
Boult, Boult Meal.
Bow, to bend.
Bough, a Branch.
Boy, a Lad.
Buoy, to bear up.
Bread, to eat.
Bred, brought up.
Breeches, to wear.
Breaches, broken Places.
Bruit, a Report.
Brute, a Beast.
Burrow, for Coneys.
Borough, a Corporation.
By, near.
Buy, for Money.
Brews, he breweth.
Bruise, to break.
Brenis, fat.
Caen, in Normandy.
Cain, the Murderer.
Cane to walk with.
Calais, in France.
Chalice, a Cup.

Call, by Name.
 Crowl, of a Perriwig.
 Cannon, a Gun.
 Canon, a Rule.
 Capital, chief.
 Capitol, a Tower in Rome.
 Career, full speed.
 Carrier, that carrieth.
 Cellar, of Liquors.
 Seller, that selleth.
 Censer, for Incense.
 Censor, a Reformer.
 Censure, Judgment.
 Centaury, an Herb.
 Century, 100 Years.
 Centry, a Guard.
 Chair, to sit in.
 Chare, a Jobb of Work.
 Champagne, in France.
 Campaign, a Summer's War.
 Choler, Rage.
 Collar, for the Neck.
 Collier, Beef and Brawn.
 Ceiling, of a Room.
 Sealing, setting a Seal.
 Cittern, an Instrument.
 Citron, a Fruit.
 Clark, of the Parish.
 Clerk, a Clergyman.
 Clause, or a Sentence.
 Claws, of a Bird, or Beast.
 Coat, a Garment.
 Cot, a Cottage.
 Comb, for the Hair.
 Come, remove hither.
 Comet, a Blazing Star.
 Commit, to do.
 Common, publick.

Commune, to converse.
 Condemn, to death.
 Contemn, to despise.
 Council, an Assembly.
 Counsel, Advise.
 Cou'd, was able.
 Cud, of Cattle.
 Courant, a Messenger.
 Current, passable.
 Currants, Corianders, Fruit.
 Creek, of the Sea.
 Crick, in the Neck.
 Causin, by Relation.
 Cozen, to cheat.
 Cymbal, an Instrument.
 Symbol, a Mark.
 Cypress, a Tree.
 Cyprus, an Island.
 Cruse, a little Vessel.
 Cruise, by the Sea Coast.
 Cygnet, a young Swan.
 Signet, a Seal.
 Daign, to vouchsafe.
 Dane, of Denmark.
 Dam, to stop.
 Damn, to condemn.
 Dear, of great value.
 Deer, in a Park.
 Deceased, dead.
 Diseased, sick.
 Decent, becoming.
 Descent, going down.
 Dissent, to disagree.
 Deep, low in the Earth.
 Disce, a Town in France.
 Deser, to put off.
 Differ, to disagree.
 Derbe, a City in Asia.

Derby, in England.
 Desert, Merit.
 Desert, a Wilderness.
 Dew, from Heaven.
 Due, a Debt.
 Do, to make.
 Doe, a Female Deer.
 Dough, Paste or Leaven.
 Dour, acid.
 Don, a Spanish Lord.
 Dour, Colour.
 Devils, Inventions.
 Devizes, in Wiltshire.
 Doer, that doeth.
 Dear, of an House.
 Dragon, a Beast.
 Dragoon, a Soldier.
 Draught, of Drink.
 Drayht, Kynells.
 Ear, of the Head.
 Eer, Ever.
 Year, twelve Months.
 Earth, the Ground.
 Month, of a Chimney.
 Easter, = Feast.
 Effier, a Woman.
 Ease, enjoy'd.
 Eay, a Town's Name.
 Eminent, famous.
 Instant, over head.
 Hour, in Number.
 Envy, in Envy.
 Er, go in.
 Err, to buy.
 Er, whole.
 Erry, Hated.
 Erroy, an Ambassador.
 Er, the Son of Jeger.

Err, to mistake.
 Exercise, Labour.
 Exorcise, to conjure.
 Extant, in being.
 Extent, distance.
 Fain, desirous.
 Feign, to dissimulate.
 Faint, weary.
 Feint, a false March.
 Fair, comely.
 Fare, of a year.
 Feed, to eat.
 Fee'd, rewarded.
 Felton, a Whilow.
 Felon, a Criminal.
 Figure, Shape.
 Vigour, Strength.
 Fil, of Metal.
 Foil, to overcome.
 Filip, with the Finger.
 Philip, a Man's Name.
 Fir, Wood.
 Furr, of a Skin.
 Flour, for Bread.
 Flower, in the Field.
 Follow, to come after.
 Fallow, ground untill'd.
 For, abroad.
 Fourth, in Number.
 Foul, nasty.
 Fowl, a Bird.
 Fourn, to sit on.
 Form, Shape.
 Francis, a Man.
 Frances, a Woman.
 Freys, Quarrels.
 Froise, fry'd Meat.
 Gall, bitter Substance.

Gaul, a French-man
 Garden, of Herbs.
 Guardian, Overseer,
 Gentle, Grapesful.
 Gentile, Heathen.
 Gentle, quier
 Gesture, Carriage
 Jester, a merry Fellow
 Gift, with Gold
 Guilt, of Sin
 Glutinous, sticking
 Gluttonous, greedy
 Grain of Corn
 Grane, an Island in Kent
 Grate, for Coals
 Great, large
 Grater, for Nutmeg
 Greater, larger
 Greave, a Boot
 Grieve, to lament
 Grays, a Town
 Graze, to eat Grass
 Grean, to sigh
 Grown, increased
 Grot, a Cave
 Groat, four Pence
 Hail to salute
 Hale, to draw a long
 Hare in the Field
 Hair of the Head
 Harsh, cruel
 Hersh, to mince Meat
 Hart a Beast
 Heart, the Seat of Life
 Haven, a Harbour
 Heaven; and Hell
 Hera of Cattle
 Heard, did hear

Hard, difficult
 Here in this Place
 Hear, to hearken
 Hie, to make haste
 High, lofty
 Hey, a Ship
 Him, that Man.
 Hymn, a Song.
 Hire Wages
 Higher, more high
 His, of him
 Hiss, to deride
 Hoar, Frost
 Whore, a lewd Woman
 Hole, Hollownes
 Whole, perfect
 Ho! to call
 Hallow, to make holy
 Hollow, empty
 Holy, pious
 Wholly, entirely
 Home, House
 Whom? What Man?
 Holm, Holly
 Hoop, for a Tub
 Whoop, to cry out
 Hue, colour
 Hew, to cut
 Hugb, a Man's Name
 I, my self
 Eye, to see with
 Idle, lazy
 Idol, an Image
 Ill, I will
 Ile, to walk in
 Isle, an Island
 Oyl, of Olives
 Employ, Work

Directions for Spelling

Imply, to signify
In, within
Inn, for Travellers
Incite, to stir up
Insight, Knowledge
Ingenious, of quick Parts
Ingenious, candid
Iron, Metal
Eyeborne, Proper Name
Ketch, a Ship
Carb, to lay hold
Kill, to Murder
Kiln, for Bricks
Kind, good natur'd
Coun't at the Mini
Kiss, to salute
Cis, Saul's Father
Enave, dishonest
Nave, of a Cart Wheel
Knight, by Honour
Night, the Evening
Lake, the Water
Laid, plac'd
Lain, did lie
Lane, a narrow Passage
Latine, old Roman
Latton, Tin
Lattice, of a Window
Luice, a Woman's Name
Letuce, an Herb.
Lease, a Promise.
Leash, thure.
Lees, Dregs of Wine.
Leese, to lose
Leeper, one leprous.
Leaper, that leapeth.
Lesson, to make lets.
Leffe, a Reading.

Left, for fear,
Least, smallest
Letbargy, Sleepiness
Liturgie, Common Prayer.
Lier, in wait
Lyar, a Teller of Lyes
Limb, a Member
Limn, to paint
Line, Length
Loyn, of Veal
Lo, behold
Low, humble
Loſe, to suffer loss
Loose, to let go
Lower, to let down
Lown, to frown
Made, finished
Maid, a young Woman.
Main, the chief Thing
Maue, of a horse,
Male, the He
Mail, Armour
Manner, Custom
Maznor a Lordship
Market for Traffick
Mark it, mind that
Marsh, watry Ground
Mash, the Hole of a Net
Martin, a Man's Name
Marten, a Bird
Mead a Meadow
Mede one of Media
Mean of low Value
Mien Behaviour
Meat to eat
Mete to measure
Message Business
Messuage a House

Mews, for Hawks.
Mise, to meditate.
Mighty, powerful.
Moiety, half.
Mile, by measure.
Mole, to labour.
Mite, small Money.
Might, strength.
Moor, a Ditch.
Mole, in the Eye.
More, in Quantity.
Mower, that mows.
Moor, barren Grounds.
Mortar, made of Lime.
Mortar, to pound in.
Naim, a Place so call'd,
Name, a Title.
Naught, bad.
Naught, nothing.
Nay, not.
Nigh, as a Horse.
Neather, lower.
Neither, none of the two.
Nice, curious.
Noise, clamour.
Nigh, near.
Nye, Isaac.
Not, denying.
Knot, to tie.
Oar of a Boat.
O'er, over.
Ore, of Metal.
Of, belonging to.
Off, at a Distance.
Oh! Alas.
Owe, to be indebted.
One, in Number.
Owe, to acknowledge.

Order, Rank.
Ordure, Dung.
Owe, of us.
Hour, sixty Minutes.
Palate, of the Mouth.
Pallet, a little Bed.
Pale, Colour.
Pail, a Vessel.
Pall, a Funeral Cloth.
Paul, a Man's Name.
Parasite, a Flatterer.
Parricide, a Murderer.
Parson, of a Parish.
Person, some Body.
Peal, upon the Bells.
Feet, the Outside.
Pear, a Fruit.
Pair, a Couple.
Pare, to cut.
Peter, a Man's Name.
Petre, Salt.
Pick, to choose.
Pique, a Quarrel.
Pint, half a Quart.
Point, a Stop.
Place, of abode.
Plaice, a Fish.
Plumb, the Fruit.
Plum, a leaden Weight.
Plow, to make a Furrow.
Pole, a long Stick.
Poll, to cut the Hair.
Pore, of the skin.
Poor, beggarly.
Possy, of Flowers.
Poesy, Poetry.
Pour, as Water.
Power, might,

Practice, Exercise
Practise, to exercise
Pray, to beseech
Prey, a Booty.
Presence, being here
Present, Gifts
Prince, King's Son.
Princess, the Daughter
Principal, chief
Principle, the first Rule
Profit, Advantage
Prophet, a Foreteller
Prophecy, foretelling
Prophesy, to foretell
Quire, of Paper
Quire, of Singers
Rack, to torment
Wreck, of a Ship
Rair, Water.
Reign, rule as King
Rin, of a Bridle
Raise, to set up
Rays, Sun-beams.
Race, to run
Raze, to demolish
Red, a Colour
Read, did read
Radish, a Root
Rice, a Shrub
Read, in a Book
Relick, a Remainder
Widow
Rear, the back part
Rear, to erect,
Rhyme, Verse
Rime, a freezing
Rice, a sort of Corn
Rise, Be up.

Rye, in Saffron
Wry, crooked
Ring, the Bells
Wring, the Hands
Rite, a Ceremony.
Right, just and true.
Wright, a working Smith
Write, with a Pen
Road, the High-way.
Row'd, did row in a Boat
Roe, a kind of Deer.
Rue, a Rank.
Rome, a City.
Room, part of a House.
Roar, by Hears.
Wrote, did write
Wrought, work.
Rough, not smooth.
Ruff, a Band.
Roof, Top of a House.
Said, did say.
Sail, of a Ship.
Sale, bargaining.
Society, Friends.
Society, Company.
Saviour, that saveth.
Seize, a Smell.
Serve, a Taste.
Saviour, Christ JESUS.
Scene, of the Stage.
Seen, behold.
Sear, great Waters.
Seize, to lay hold of.
Cease, to leave off.
Sent, order'd away.
Scent, a Smell.
Shew, to make appear.
Shoe, for the Foot.

Ship, for sailing.
 Sheep, a Beast.
 Shear, a Pimp.
 Shore, the Sea Coast.
 Shown, did shew.
 Shown, did shew.
 Spread, to mince.
 Served, minced.
 Sign, a Token.
 Six, in Geometry.
 Site, Situation.
 Cite, to instance.
 Sight, seeing.
 Sink, to go down.
 Cinque, five.
 Slight, to despise.
 Sleight, Dexterity.
 Sile, a four Foot.
 Slow, walk slowly.
 Slough, a Puddle.
 Soul, of a Shoe.
 Soul, of a Man.
 Sole, of a Fish.
 Some, a part.
 Sow, the whole.
 Son, a Man Child.
 Sun, the Heavenly Light.
 Soon, quickly.
 Sown, to plant.
 Sore, an Ulcer.
 Sore, to mount upward.
 Sore, to look earnestly.
 Stair, a Step.
 Steer, a young Bullock.
 Steer, to guide a Ship.
 Stile, for Passage.
 Style, of Writing.

Stood, did stand.
 Stud, the Embroider.
 Straight, not crooked.
 Strait, narrow.
 Succor, help.
 Sucker, a young Twig.
 Saz, to make Sun.
 Sew, with a Needle.
 Tail, the End.
 Tale, a Story.
 Tame, not wild.
 Theme, a Town.
 Tare, weight allow'd.
 Tear, to read in Pieces.
 Then, in Comparison.
 Then, at that Time.
 There, in the Place.
 Their, of them.
 Through, narrow.
 Throw, to cast.
 Throat, a part of the Neck.
 Thrown, cast.
 Tie, to make fast.
 Toy, a Play thing.
 Tide, Flux of the Sea.
 Tied, made fast.
 Tile, for covering.
 Tail, to take Pain.
 Time, when.
 Thyme, a sweet Herb.
 To, unto.
 Tow, of the Fore.
 Tow, to draw along.
 Too, likewise.
 Two, a Couple.
 Told, as a Tale.
 Told, as a Bull.
 Tong, for the Fire.

Directions for Spelling,

Tongues, Languages.
Towr, to hang in sight.
Tower, of Defence.
Tuscan, Order.
Tuck, a great Tooth.
Vacation, a ceasing.
Vocation, a Calling.
Veil, a Covering.
Veal, Calfs Flesh.
Vale, a Valley.
Vain, useless.
Vane, to shew the Wind.
Vein, of the Blood.
Valley, a Dale.
Value, Worth.
Valley, of Shot.
Vassal, a Slave.
Vessel, for use.
Vial, or **Pial,** a Glass.
Viol, for Musick.
Vice, ill Habit.
Vise, for Workmen.
Voice, a Sound.
Vice, Practice.
Ever, a Baron.
Your, of you.
Use, to be used.
Ewe, Sheep.
Wade, to go in Water.
Wight's, in the Ballance.
Wail, to mourn.
Whale, a Sea Fish.
Wale, Mark of a Whip.
Wain, to decrease.
Wean, a Child.
Wait, to look for.
Weight, Heaviness.
Ware, Merchandize.

Wear, to put on Cloths.
Were, was.
Waste, to spend.
Waist, the middle.
Way, to walk in.
Weight, to poize.
Wey, forty Bushels.
Weal, good.
Wheal, a Pimple.
Weald, of Kent and Suffex.
Weild, to manage.
Wen, a Swelling.
When, at what Time.
Wet, watry.
Whet, to sharpen.
What, which.
Wat, Waiter.
While, in the mean Time.
Wile, a Trick.
Where, a lewd Woman.
Woer, a Suiter.
Wight, an Island.
White, a Colour.
Wist, knew.
Whist, Silence.
Wee, Misery.
Who, which.
Wood, of Trees.
Wou'd was willing.
Yarn, Woollen.
Earn, to get.
Yern, to Compassionate.
Ye, your selves.
Yea, yes.
Yew, a Tree.
Ewe, a Sheep.
You, your self.

and Reading true English;

29

Of Points and Stops.

Since Points, Stops and Notes are of absolute necessity in Writing True English,
Therefore

*All Points and Stops must be observ'd when you
Would write with Credit, and your Skill would shew;*

If Stops be small, then Comma you shou'd take,

The Comma (,)

If great, you must a Semi-colon make;

The Semicolon (;)

If half a sentence, then the Colon you

The Colon (:)

Must plainly make. If our this point doth shew;

The Period or full Point (.)

The Period is a point of perfect sence, and perfect
Sentence, at the end of which the Tone of the Voice falls
below its ordinary Tenor, with a long Pause.

An Apostrophe (')

This is set o'er that place where you
leave out a Vowel, as these Words do in the

Pen'd, fin'd, train'd, s'other, 'is, 'with

Hyphen, Division or Note of Connexion (-)

When

[Directions for Spelling]

When you have Compound Words or end your line
In parting Words this Mark is for a sign.

As Old-England, New-York, Husband-men,

An Interrogation (?)

This Note is put when any Question's made,
As doth appear in what is under-said;

Qu. What shall I do? Whether shall I flee? Whom shall I blame? Where is the Man?

A Note of Admiration (!)

This Mark denotes our suddain Admiration,
Of what we say, or Write, or give Relation.

As, Hear, O Heavens: give ear, O Earth!

A Parenthesis ({)

This Mark a sentence doth inclose when we
Use, or omit the same, yet sense 'twill be.

As, In me (that is, in my flesh) dwelleth no good thing.

A Note of Citation (")

This is then made when Authors quoted are,
And do shew forth what they to us declare.

An Index (¶)

This Note like to a fore-finger is made,
To point to what Remarkable is said.

Afterism (*) Oblisk (†)

These are as Notes, always referring to
The Margin, where the meaning you may know.

A Section S

A Paragraph ¶

A Diacritic ::

Part II.

Arithmetick

MADE EASIE

Teaching the Necessary Rules thereof.

A Rithmetick is the Art of Numbering well, or of Accounting well by Numbers; for as Magnitudes or Geometrie is the Subject of Geometry, so is Number the Subject of Arithmetick.

The whole Art of Arithmetick depends upon the knowledge of the five following Rules, viz.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------|
| 1 Numeration, | 2 Addition, | 3 Subtraction, | 4 Multiplication, | 5 Division. |
|---------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------|

All the rest of the Art being compounded of these, of which we shall treat particularly in their order.

Of Numeration.

Numeration, is to express or write down the value of any number with letters proposed.

ALL

Illustration.

All Numbers are written with ten Characters, called Figures, of which the last is called a Cypher, and of it self it signifies nothing, but serveth (according as it is placed) to increase or diminish the value of another figure to which it is either annexed or prefixed.

The Ten Characters of Figures by which all Numbers are expressed, are thus written, viz.

One; Two; Three; Four; Five; Six;

1 2 3 4 5 6

Seven; Eight; Nine; Cypher.

7 8 9 0

The Cypher serveth to make up the number of places, but of it self signifies nothing.

The nine first of these are called significant Figures.

And the value of any Figure Increaseth in a *Ducuple* proportion from the right Hand to the left, every place being Ten times the value of the former, as you may see in the following Table.

NUMERATION.

31

A Numeration Table.

Hundreds of Millions,
 Tens of Millions,
 Millions,
 Hundreds of Thousands,
 Tens of Thousands,
 Thousands,
 Hundreds,
 Tens,
 Units.

The Numbers in the Table are thus to be read, viz.

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

987 Mil. 654 Th. 321.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
3	4	5	6	7	8	9		
4	5	6	7	8	9			
5	6	7	8	9				
6	7	8	9					
7	8	9						
8	9							
9								

123 Mil. 456 Th. 789.
 23 Mil. 456 Th. 789.
 3 Mil. 456 Th. 789.
 456 Th. 789.
 56 Th. 789.
 6 Th. 789.
 789.
 789.
 789.

Over against every place of the Numbers in the Table is written (in words at length) the value thereof, Units, Tens, Hundreds, Thousands, &c. Which being perfectly gotten by heart, and well understood, will be thereby enabled to express the value of any Number proposed.

And on the right Hand of the Table over against every Number therein contained you are directed how to read, or express those Numbers: As 987651, is thus to be read, *viz.* Nine Hundred Eighty Seven Millions, six Hundred fifty four Thousand, three Hundred twenty one. And the like is to be understood of the rest.

Although the foregoing Table be made to consist but of Nine Places, yet it may be continued to more Places at pleasure, even *ad infinitum*, observing that the value of every place is ten times as much as that which goeth before it; so the tenth place is *Thousands of Millions*, the eleventh place is *Tens of Thousands of Millions*, the 12 place is *Hundreds of Thousands of Millions*, and the 13th Place is *Millions of Millions*.

Thus much of *Notation*, now we shall proceed to *Addition*.

OF A D D I T I O N.

Addition Teacheth us to add, or put together diverse Numbers, and to bring them to one total Sum. As if 7 and 9 were given to be added together, the Sum will be 16, and the Sum of 5 and 4 is nine.

When it is required to add together several Numbers of one Denomination, they must (in order to the Work) be disposed of according to the following example, *viz.*

Let it be required to add 136 and 42 together, they must be placed one under the other as followeth, *viz.* Thus

136

42

Having placed the given Numbers, as before is directed, then draw a straight line under them, and (beginning at the Place of units) add all the figures together that stand over one another in that Rank, putting their Sum under the said straight line; As in this Example, I say, 2 and 6 is 8, wherefore I put 8 under the line, in its proper place. Then 3 and 4, and proceed to the next Rank which is the Place

Place of Tens, saying 4 and 3 is 7 wherefore I put 7 in its proper place under the line, and proceed to the next last Rank, where I find only 1, which I put down in its proper place under the line, and

	136
42	
178	

so the Work is finished: and I find that the Total Sum of 136 and 42 to be 178. See the Operation in the Margin.

If in adding together any of the Ranks (as is before directed) their Sum amounts to, or exceeds 10, or any number of tens, then in such case you are either to set down a Cypher under the line in its proper Place, or else the excess above the ten or tens; and for every ten carry one unite to be added to the next Rank of Figures. As, if it amount to 30, then set down (0) a Cypher, and carry 3 (for the three tens) to be added, to the next Rank; if it amount to 34, then set down four under the Rank that you added, and carry 3 to the next, &c. And when you have cast up the last Rank towards the left Hand, set down the Total that it amounteth to, as in the following Example.

748 364 256 542 1650	I begin, saying 2 and 6 is 8, and 4 is 12, and 8 makes 20, which is just 2 tens, wherefore I put down 0 under the line, and carry 2 to the next Rank for the 2 Tens, and proceed, saying, 2 that I carry and 4 is 6, and 9 is 15, and 6 is 21, and 4 is 25, which is 5 above 10. Wherefore I put down 5 under the line, and carry 2 for the 2 tens to the next Rank; and then proceed, saying, 2 that I carry, and 2 is 4, and 2 is 6, and 3 is 9, and 7 makes 16. Wherefore (because it is the last Rank) I put down 16 under the line, and so the work is finished, the total Sum of this Addition being 1650.
--	---

A Man had in his Orchard 135 Apple-Trees, 76 Pear-Trees, 107 Cherry-Trees and 36 Plum-Trees, and he desires to know how many Trees he hath in all.

Place your Numbers *just* under another, as in the Margin, and then begin to add them together at your right Hand, saying 5 and 7 is 12 and 6 is 18, and 6 is 25, place 5 under the line, and carry 2 to the next Row, saying 2 and 3 is 5 and 7 is 12 and 3 is 15, place

5 under the line, and carry 1 to the next Row, saying, 1 and 1 is 2 and 1 is 3, which 3 I set under the line, and ~~because there was no ten contained in that row, therefore~~ the total is 355, and so many Trees are in the Orchard.

Apple trees	176
Pear trees	076
Cherry trees	107
Plumb trees	016

Trees in all 355

Addition of Money.

The most usual Coins used in England, are Pounds, Shillings, Pence and Farthings, (and in which Denominations we keep our Accounts here in America) of which

4 Farthings	} makes {	1 Penny
12 Pence		1 Shilling
20 Shillings		1 Pound.

In all Sums you are to mind the Title of your Accounts, and how many of the first Denomination does make one of the second, and how many of the second do make one of the third, and how many of the 3d do make one of the 4th; and so in this manner if there be more.

When it is required to add together Numbers consisting of divers Denominations, place all Numbers of the same Denomination one directly under another, as Pounds under Pounds, Shillings under Shillings, Pence under Pence, and Farthings under Farthings; the like is to be understood of Weight, Measure, Time, &c.

Having placed your Sums and Denominations right in their proper Ranks, draw a line under them, and begin your Addition with the least Denomination, as in the following example,

ADDITION

37

1. Let it be required to add together 37*l.* 16*s.* 9*d.* 3*q.* and 21*l.* 9*s.* 8*d.* 1*q.* and 13*l.* 12*s.* 9*d.* 2*q.* in order to which I set them down, and draw a line under them as followeth.

First, I begin with the least Denomination, which here is Farthings, saying, 2 and 1 is 3, and 3 is 6 *q.* which is 1 *d.* and 2 *q.* I put the 2 farthings under the line and carry the 1 *d.* to the next row, which is the Place of Pence, saying, 1 that I carry

<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>q.</i>
37	16	9	3
21	9	8	1
13	12	9	2
71	19	3	2

and 9 is 10, and 8 is 18 *d.* which is 1 *s.* and 6 *d.* (Now against the 8 I make a prick with my Pen, for my better remembrance, to signify that there is 1 *s.* to be carried to the place of Shillings) Then go on, and say, 6 and 9 is 15, which is 1 *s.* and 3 *d.* and therefore against 9 I make a prick with my Pen, and (because that is the last number) I set down the odd 3 *d.* under the Place of Pence; and (seeing I find 2 Pence in the row of Pence, therefore) I carry 2 *s.* to the place of Shillings, saying, 2 *s.* which I carried, and 18 is 20, and 9 is 29 *s.* (which is 2 *l.* and 9 *s.* remaining) make a prick against the 9, and go on, saying, 2 *s.* and 16 is 18 *s.* which (being there are no more Numbers to be added, and being less than 20 *s.* I set 18 under the row of Shillings, and finding one prick in said row, I therefore carry 1 to the Place of Pounds; saying, 1 that I carried, and 3 is 4, and 1 is 5, and 2 is 7 *l.* set down 7 under the line (as in Addition of Numbers of one Denomination) and carry 1 to the next row, saying, 1 that I carried and 1 is 2, and 2 is 4, and 3 is 7 which being the last, I set it down; and the Total or whole Sum is 71 Pounds, 19 Shillings, 3 Pence, 2 Farthings.

Answer

Example 2. I have received these following several Sums of Money, and desire to know how much I have received in all.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Received at one time,	29	16	8.
As another time,	32	17.	9.
More,	81	13	11
The Sums received amount to	144.	8.	4.

Here in this Example the least Denomination is Pence, therefore I begin with them and say, 11 *d.* and 9 *d.* is 20 *d.* (which is 1 *s.* and 8 *d.*) make 2 prick against the 9, and say, 8 *d.* and 8 *d.* is 1 *s.* and 4 *d.* make 2 prick, against the 8, and set down the odd 4 *d.* under the line. Then (because there are 2 Pricks in the row of Pence) you must carry 2 *s.* to the Place of Shillings, saying, 2 *s.* which I carry, and 13 is 15 *s.* and 17 is 32 *s.* (which is 1 *l.* 12 *s.*) make a prick against 17, and say, 12 *s.* and 16 is 28 *s.* make a prick against 16 and (because there are no more Numbers to be added) set down the odd 8 *s.* under the Shillings, and (being there are 2 pricks in the row of Shillings) carry 2 to the place of Pounds, saying 2 and 1 is 3, and 2 is 5, and 9 is 14, set down 4 and carry 1 to the next row; saying 1 that I carry and 8 is 9, and 3 is 12, and 2 is 14, which (because 'tis the last) you set down 14, and your work is done. And you find that the several Sums received amount to 144 *l.* 8 *s.* 4 *d.*

Now though I direct you to make Pricks with your Pen at every 4 in the Farthings, and at every 12 in the Pence, and at every 20 in the Shillings (which is to help your Memory) yet this way is neither so neat nor commendable; for if you once prick it false, you must prick it over again, which will look like so many Bloss, and make you more subject to mistake, Therefore I recommend to you the two following Tables, to be gotten perfectly by

ADDITION

by heart, before you adventure upon Addition; As, 1
 12 Pence, &c. as followeth, viz.

Note, That	1	12	Note also, That	20	1	8
	2	24		30	2	6
	3	36		40	3	4
	4	48		50	4	2
	5	60		60	5	0
	6	72		70	5	10
	7	84		80	6	8
	8	96		90	7	6
	9	108		100	8	4
	10	120		110	9	
	11	132		120	10	0
	12	144				

The Proof of Addition.

Add all the Sums up again (except the uppermost, which is here 300*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.* 2*qr.*) and then add the Total thereof unto the said uppermost Line, and if it make the just Sum of the first Total, it is true, otherwise not. To demonstrate which observe the following Example, viz.

300 <i>l.</i> 11 <i>s.</i> 6 <i>d.</i> 2 <i>qr.</i>				
300	11	6	2	
102	15	1	1	
106	17	10	0	
241	18	11	1	
601	11	11	1	
314	10	10	2	
611	11	11	1	
Total	2479	19	00	0
	2479	19	00	0

ADDITION.

II. Of Troy Weight.

Troy Weight is a Weight used in *Great-Britain*, by which is weighed *Bread, Gold, Silver, Pearl, &c.* The most usual Denominations of which Weight, are *Pounds, Ounces, Penny-Weights* and *Grains*; of which

24 Grains	} make }	1 Penny-weight,
20 Penny-weight		1 Ounce,
12 Ounces		1 Pound,

The Addition of *Troy Weight* (and consequently of any other Weight or Measure whatsoever, either Domestick or Foreign) differeth nothing at all from the Addition of *English* Coyn last taught, if the Affair of one Denomination to another be first known; for whereas in Money, because 12 *d.* makes 1 *s.*, you therefore observe how many *twelves* there are in the Addition of your Pence, and for every 12 you add 1 *s.* to the place of Shillings; so in the Addition of *Troy Weight*, knowing that 24 *gr.* make one *Penny-Weight*, you must therefore in the Addition of *Grains* in *Troy Weight*, observe how many times 24 you find in your line of *Grains*, and for every 24 carry one to the place of *Penny-weights*; likewise, in the Addition of *Penny-weights*, you must consider how many times 20 is contained in your line, and for every 20 carry one to the Place of *Ounces*, (because 20 *Penny weight* make an Ounce). Also in the Addition of *Ounces* *Troy*, you must observe how many times 12 you find in your line of *Ounces*, and for every 12 carry one to the place of *Pounds*; Then lastly, Add your *Pounds* together, as numbers of one Denomination.

Examples for Practice.

l.	ss.	pw.	gr.	l.	ss.	pw.	gr.
32	9	12	16	02	10	17	11
17	11	06	9	07	06	02	01
30	8	15	10	00	00	12	08
08	10	4	7	00	05	02	12
366	3	18	18	51	10	19	15

III, Of *Avoirdupois* little Weight.

There is another kind of Weight most commonly used in Great Britain, called *Avoirdupois* little Weight; by which is weighed all sorts of Ware or Merchandize, Groceries, as Sugar, Pepper, Cloves, &c. This Weight is commonly divided into these Denominations, Pounds, Ounces and Drames; of which

6 Drames }
16 Ounces } make 1 Pound, 1

IV, Of *Avoirdupois* great Weight,

There is also a Weight commonly used in Great Britain, by which is weighed all Commodities that are sold by the Hundred, as Tobacco, Wool, Flesh, Butter, Cheese, and the like; the which Hundred Weight containeth 112 Pounds; and the Hundred weight is divided into Quarters, Pounds and Ounces; so that

16 Ounces }
28 Pounds } make 1 Quarter of a Hundred,
4 Quarters } 1 Hundred weight

In the Addition of *Avoirdupois* weight you must observe the very same method and Order, as in Money and Troy weight, having due respect to the Quantity of the Denomination, &c.

ADDITION

Example for Practice.

I have bought five Cask of Sugar of one man, and five Cask of another Man, all different weights, and want to know how much in all I have had of each man, In order to know which I set down each mans parcels by themselves, and add them together according to the former Directions, as followeth, viz,

C.	qr.	lb.	oz.		C.	qr.	lb.	oz.
37	3	21	12		05	1	07	00
02	1	06	03		03	2	18	06
33	2	20	00		00	1	06	08
10	0	00	00		11	3	04	00
12	1	07	03		06	1	10	05
113	2	27	02		27	1	19	03

By this it appears, that I have received from one Man 113 Hundred 2 Quarters 21 Pounds & 2 Ounces, and from another Man I have received 27 Hundred 1 Quarter 18 Pounds and 3 Ounces.

V. Of Liquid Measures.

Liquid Measures are those by which all sorts of Liquors are measured, of which a *Pint* is the least, according to the following Table.

2 Pints	} Make	1 Quart,
2 Quarts		1 Pottle,
2 Pottles		1 Gallon,
63 Gallons		1 Hogshead,
4 Hogsheads		1 Tun,

Dry Measures are those by which Corn, &c. are measured, of which

2 Pints	} make	1 Quart,
8 Quarts		1 Peck,
4 Pecks		1 Bushel.

ADDITION.

VII. Of Land Measures.

The Measure is that by which we measure *Earth, Land, Boards, Glass, Pavement, &c.* of which Measure a Barley Corn is the least. so that

3 Barley Corns	} Make	1 Inch,
12 Inches		1 Foot,
3 Feet		1 Yard,
3 Foot 6 Inches		1 Ell,
16 Foot & half		1 Fathom,
40 Perches		1 Furlong,
8 Furlongs		1 Mile.

VIII. Of TIME.

Time consisteth of *Years, Months, Weeks, Days, Hours, and Minutes*, so that

60 Minutes	} Make	1 Hour,
24 Hours		1 Day,
7 Days		1 Week,
4 Weeks		1 Month,
12 Months 1 day & 6 hours		1 Year,

IX. Of Apothecaries Weights.

The Weights used by Apothecaries are *Grains, Scruples, Drams and Ounces*, of which

20 Grains	} Make	1 Scruple,
3 Scruples		1 Dram,
8 Drams		1 Ounce,
16 Ounces		1 Pound,

By the use of these Tables, and the Rules and Cautions before expressed, any one may make *Addition* of any the above named *Coins, Weights and Measures*; And therefore I shall only set down some Examples for Practice, and so conclude the Rule of *Addition*.

Addition of Liquid Measure.

Tuns, hogs.	Gall.	Potl.	qua.	Pt.	In adding of these sums you must remember for every 2 Pints carry one quart, 2 Quarts 1 peck, every 2 Pecks 1 bushel, every 6 bush. 1 hogsb., and for every 4 Hogsb. carry 1 Tun. Which being perform'd, there is in this Sum 2461 Tuns 3 hogsb. 04 gall. 0 Pot. 1 quart, 1 Pint.
412	3	16	1	0	1
100	1	10	1	1	0
317	1	15	0	1	1
241	2	30	1	0	2
317	1	40	1	1	3
374	3	10	0	2	2
343	2	10	1	1	0
333	1	17	1	1	0
2461	3	04	0	1	1

Addition of Dry Measure.

Bush.	Pecks,	Quar.	Pints,	Bush.	Pecks,	Quar.	Pint
317	1	2	3	400	1	1	3
102	3	0	6	103	2	1	2
439	0	7	6	210	1	7	1
200	8	5	0	317	1	3	2
045	0	2	8	106	3	00	0
117	2	9	1				
1224	1	10	9				

Of Subtraction.

Subtraction is the taking of one or more small Numbers out of a greater, as 7 out of 10, or 37 out of 38, or the like.

Example 1. First set down the greater Number (from which you would subtract) and then place the lesser Number (to be subtracted) under it, draw a Line, as you see done in the Margin, and begin with the first Figure towards the Right hand, (which is 6) saying, 6 from 9, and there remains 3.

Received 397
Paid 136

Remains 261

Place

place 3 under the line and go to the next figure, which is 3, saying 3 from 7, and there remains 4, place 4 under the line, and go to the next figure, which is 1, saying 1 from 3 and there remains 2, place 2 under the line and your Substraction is ended.

Example 2. I have borrowed 96527 l and I have paid 2976 l. and I want to know how much I have yet to pay.

In order to resolve which, Place the figures one under another (as you see done in the Margin) draw a line under them, and begin with the

first figure towards the right Hand, say 6 out of 7, and there remains 1, which set down, and go to the next, saying,

Borrowed	96527
Paid	2976

Remains due	93551
-------------	-------

7 out of 2 I cannot (wherefore you must borrow 10, and add it to your figure 2, which makes it 12, then say 7 from 12 and there remains 5, which set down. Then go to the next, and say, 9 and 1 that I borrowed is 10 (for when ever you borrow, you must be sure to pay it back again to the next figure) 10 from 5 I cannot, but (I borrow (10) and add it to 5, which makes it 15; then say) 10 from 15 and there remains 5, which set down under the line, Then go on, and say, one that I borrowed (or 1 that I carry) and 2 is 3, take 3 out of 6 and there remains 3, which place under the line; because there are no more Figures to be subtracted from the Number above, you must say 0 from 9 and there remains 9, which place down under the line, and your Substraction is ended, and it shows that you have 93551 l, yet to pay.

Substraction of divers Denominations,

In Substraction of Numbers of Divers Denominations, you must observe the same Method as in Addition, namely, to place Pounds under Pounds, Shillings under Shillings and Pence under Pence; and always place the greatest Sum uppermost. And you must also here (as in Addition) observe

46 SUBTRACTION

how many of the first Denomination make one of the second, and so on. And if the Figure or Figures be greater than those you are to subtract from, borrow one from the next Denomination. The following Examples will explain it to you. And

Having placed the Sum; and drawn a line under it (as in the Margin, begin with the least Denomination (which here is Pence) and say, Take 5 d. from 3 d. I cannot, but 5 d. from a Shilling or 12 d. (that I borrow) and there remains 9 d, which ad-

ded to the 3 makes 10 d.

which set down. Then

go to the Shillings, and

say, 1 that I borrowed,

(for you must be sure to

pay what you borrow) and 12 is 13, which to take from

11 I cannot; therefore I must borrow 20 s, which ad-

ded to 11 s, makes 31 s, then say 13 s, from 31 s, and

there remains 18 s, which set down. Then go the next

Denomination, which is Pounds, and say 1 that I borrow-

ed and 6 is 7; now 7 from 5 I cannot, but 7 from 15 and

there remains 8, which I set down. Then, 1 that I bor-

rowed and 9 is 10, now 10 from 7 I cannot; but 10

from 17; and there remains 7, which set down. Then

again, 1 that I borrowed and 1 is 2, 2 from 2 and there

remains 0

So that

being taken from

there remains

Received	275	11	3
Laid out	196	12	5
Remains	78	18	10

l. s. d.

196 12 05

275 11 03

078 18 10

And thus in any other Sums of this nature; observe that the same that you carried in Addition, the same you must borrow in Subtraction: as 12 in the Pence, 20 in the Shillings, and 10 in the last Denomination;

Subtraction of Avoir-du-poise Weight,

For the better understanding of the Rule observe (as you did before) the Title of your Account, and where you cannot take one Number out of another, take it out of the

next

SUBTRACTION. 47

next Denomination, as in the following Example of *Ap-
pro-
poize Weights.*

	C.	gr.	lb.	oz.	dr.
Bought	74	2	11	11	10
Sold	18	3	14	13	12
Remains	18	3	24	13	14

I begin with the least Denomination, and say, 12 drams from 10 I cannot, but 12 from 1 ounce (which containeth 16 dr.) and there rests 4, and 10 makes 14, which I set down; Then I go to the Ounces, where I find 13, and that I borrowed is 14, 14 from 11 I cannot, but I borrow 1 lb. (which is 16 oz.) and say 14 from 16 and there remains 2, and the 11 is 13, which I set down; Then I go to the Pounds, and say, 14 and 1 that I borrowed is 15, 15 from 11 I cannot (therefore I borrow 1 Quarter, which is 28 lb.) Take 15 from 28, and there remains 13, and the 11 is 14, which I set down. Go to the next and say, 1 that I borrowed and 3 is 4, 4 from 2 I cannot, but I borrow 1 Hundred which is 4 grs. and say, 4 from 4 and there remains 0, but the 2 is 2 which I set down. Now 1 that I borrowed and 8 is 9, 9 from 7 I cannot, but 9 from 17 and there remains 8, Now 1 that I borrowed and 1 is 2, 2 from 4 and there remains 2, and the work is finished,

The Proof of Subtraction.

The Proof of Subtraction is by Addition; for adding the Number to be Subtracted to the Remainder, the Sum of them must be Equal to the number given, if you have truly wrought: The operation you may see in the following example.

The number given is

987

The number to be Subtracted

243

The Remainder is

744

The Proof

987

SUBTRACTION.

Add the Number to be Subtracted, 243, to the Remainder 744. The Sum of them is 987, which is Equal to the Number given.

Questions performed by Addition and Subtraction.

Quest. 1 What Number is that which being added to 376 shall make 1000? Subtract 376 from 1000, the Remainder is 624, the Number sought.

Quest. 2 What Number of Pounds Shillings and Pence must be added to 26*l.* 17*s.* 3*d.* to make up the Sum 100*l.*? Subtract 36*l.* 17*s.* 3*d.* from 100*l.* the Remainder is 63*l.* 2*s.* 9*d.* which added to 36*l.* 17*s.* 3*d.* makes 100*l.*

Quest. 3. In the Year of our Lord 1440 the famous Art of Printing was Invented; I would know how long it is since that time to this Year of our Lord 1727? From 1727 Subtract 1440 the Remainder is 287, and so many Years are expired since Printing was invented.

Quest. 4. An Army consisting of 13721 Horse, 26850 Foot; in an engagement there was slain 3760 horse, and 7523 foot; the Question is, How many were slain in all? and how many Horse and how many Foot escaped? From the 13721 Horse that went out subtract the 3760 that were slain, and there remains 9961, and so many Horse escaped: also, from the 26850 Foot which went out, subtract the 7523, which were slain, and there remains 19327, the Number of Foot that escaped. And by adding the 3760 Horse which were slain to the 7523 Foot which were slain, their Total is 11283, and so many were slain in all

Of Multiplication.

Multiplication serveth instead of many Additions, and teacheth of two Numbers given to increase the greater as often as there are Unites in the lesser.

There are three things strictly to be observed in Multiplication, viz.

1 The

MULTIPLICATION.

45

1. The *Multiplicator*, or Sum by which you Multiply.

2. The *Product*, or Sum Produced.

But before you enter upon the Practice of *Multiplication*, it is necessary to learn the *Multiplication Table* by heart. which is here set in this Margin.

TO Read this Table of Multiplication,

1st, Begin at the Top, at the Figure 2, saying, 2 times 2 is 4. 2^{dly}, 3 times 3 is 9, &c. Next, 4 times 4 is 16. Then in the last Line read, 9 times 9 is 81. The Table is so plain, that I need give you no more Directions.

Therefore I shall proceed to give you some Examples of the Practice of *Multiplication*.

I. Example. What is the Number of 3 times 654?

Answer. If you set down the Number 654, 3 times one under the other, and add them together, you will find the Number to be 1962.

But by *Multiplication* such Questions are more readily answered than by *Addition*. And therefore I set the Number in question down thus,

654 *Multiplicand,*

3 *Multiplicator.*

In order thereto, you must observe, In *Multiplication* to set down the greatest Number 1st, and the lesser under it, and

2 Times	2 is	4
	3 is	6
	4 is	8
	5 is	10
	6 is	12
	7 is	14
	8 is	16
	9 is	18

3 Times	3 is	9
	4 is	12
	5 is	15
	6 is	18
	7 is	21
	8 is	24
	9 is	27

4 Times	4 is	16
	5 is	20
	6 is	24
	7 is	28
	8 is	32
	9 is	36

5 Times	5 is	25
	6 is	30
	7 is	35
	8 is	40
	9 is	45

6 Times	6 is	36
	7 is	42
	8 is	48
	9 is	54

7 Times	7 is	49
	8 is	56
	9 is	63

8 Times	8 is	64
	9 is	72

9 Times	9 is	81
---------	------	----

MULTIPLICATION.

Figure of the Multiplier, saying 4 times 8 is 32, which I set down double under the Multiplier; then say, 4 times 1 is 4, which I set down; then 4 times 2 is 8, which I set down, and carry 1; Then 4 times 3 is 12, and the carry is 14, which I set down. Then I draw a line under them, and add these two Lines of Figures together, (as in Addition) saying, 6 is 6, put 6 under the Line; then say, 8 and 9 is 17, set down 7 and carry 1, saying, 1 that I carry and 4 is 5, and 6 is 11, set down 1, and carry 1, saying, 1 that I carry and 8 is 9, 9 & 9 is 18, set down 8, and carry 1, 1 that I carry and 4 is 5, and 2 is 7, which I set down, and go to the next, where I find only 1, which I set down, and the Work is done, and I find the Product to be 178176.

How to Prove Multiplication.

First, Cast away the Nines of the Multiplier (in the above example) 3712, saying, 3 and 7 is 10, cast away 9, and there remains 1; then 1 and 1 is 2, and 2 is 4, which I set down at the right side of the Cross. Then

2dly. Cast away all the Nines in the Multiplier, saying, 4 and 8 is 12, cast away 9, and there remains 3, which I place on the left side of the Cross. Then

3dly. Multiply 4 by 3, saying, 2 times 4 is 8, and there remains 2, which I place at the bottom of the Cross, as yet the Multiplier is not done.

4thly. Cast away the Nines of the Product, saying, 1 and 7 is 8, and 8 and 8 is 16, and there remains 7; Then 7 and 7 is 15, Cast away 9, and there remains 6; Then 6 and 6 is 12, Cast away 9, and there remains 3, which place at the bottom of the Cross; and if the top Figure and the Bottom be alike, it shews that your Multiplication is truly performed.

This is the common way to Prove Multiplication; but the most certain proof is by Division, as I will hereafter shew you.

Questions performed by Multiplication.

Q. 1 If a piece of Land be 236 Perches long and 182 Perches broad, how many square Perches are contained therein? Multiply 236 the length, by 182 the breadth, the Product is 42952. and so many square Perches are contained in such a piece of Land.

Q. 2 There are 365 Days in a Year, and in every Day 24 hours; How many hours are there in a Year? Multiply 365 the number of Days, by 24, the number of Hours, the Product is 8760, and so many hours there be in a Year.

Q. 3 From New-York to Philadelphia it's accounted 102 Miles. How many Yards is it from New-York to Philadelphia? Multiply 1760 the number of Yards contained in one Mile by 102, the Product is 12120. And so many Yards there is between New-York and Philadelphia.

Of Division.

Division is just the contrary to *Multiplication*; for this turns small Denominations to greater, as *Multiplication* turns greater to smaller. And as *Multiplication* is a Compendium of many *Additions*; so *Division* is but a Compendium of many *Subtractions*.

And as I told you before, that the best Proof of *Multiplication* was by *Division*, so I here tell you, that the best Proof of *Division* is by *Multiplication*, as I shall, hereafter shew you.

In this Rule of *Division*, you must Observe,

1. The *Dividend*, or Sum to be Divided.
2. The *Divisor*, or Sum by which we Divide.
3. The *Quotient*, which is the Sum Produced. And
4. the *Remainder*, which is always less than the *Divisor*.

There are several Ways of Dividing one Number by another, but

DIVISION.

53

but I shall only insert one, which is plainer than Cancellation and shorter, and is the way now commonly practised, viz.

This way of Division is thus set down.

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Divisor } 4 \overline{) 12} \quad \text{Quotient,} \\ 12 \\ \hline 0 \end{array}$$

Having thus set down your Sums in order, Consider with your self how often times 4 you can have in 12, but now because 1 is less than 4 you must take the next figure with it, and Consider how often times 4 is contained in 12, which is 3 times, set 3 in the Quotient, then Multiply the Divisor by the Quotient, the Product is 12, which Subtract from the Dividend, and there Remains 0.

Next, let it be required to Divide. 37542 by 7.

Having made a crooked line at each end of the Dividend, (to separate it from the Divisor and Quotient,) make a point or prick under 7 in the Dividend (not under 3, because you cannot take the Divisor from the 3) and say; how often is 7 (the Divisor) contained in 37, the first Branch toward the left hand of the Dividend? The Answer is, 5 times, which (5) put in the Quotient, and Multiply the Divisor thereby, saying 5 times 7 is 35, which deduct from the said 37, and put the Remainder, which is 2, under a line; as in the Example; Then making a prick under the 6 (as a distinguishing Mark, that no figure may be brought down twice) place it to the Right-hand of the Remainder, 2, and ask how often 7 is contained in 26? the Answer is 3 times; which put in the Quotient, (as before) multiplying the Divisor thereby: as 3 times 7 is 21, from 26 and there remains 5, which put under the 6, (drawing a line between the 26 and 5) Then make a prick under the next Figure, toward the right hand, in the Dividend; viz, under 4, and place it to the right

$$7 \overline{) 37542} \quad \text{Quotient } 5377$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 35 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 26 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 54 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 52 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 3 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

right hand of the Remainder 5, making it 54, and ask how often the Divisor, 7, can be had in 54? Answer, 7 times; which put in the Quotient, and say 7 times 7 is 49, from 54, and there rests 5; which put under a line, as before. Lastly, make a prick under the 2 in the Dividend, and place it to the Right-hand of the 5, and ask how often the Divisor 7 can be had in 52? the answer is, 7 times, which put in the Quotient, and Multiply the Divisor thereby, saying, 7 times 7 is 49; which deduct from the 52, and the Remainder is 3; and you have no more Figures in the Dividend, so the Work is finished; and I find that 5377 is one seventh part of 37639, and 3 over.

2. *There is 5152 l. to be divided betwixt 7 men; the Question is, how much each man must have?*

First, set the Numbers down as you see in the Margent, and because 7 (the Divisor) is greater than 5 (the first figure of the Dividend) make a prick under the second Figure, viz. under 1. 2dly,

$$\begin{array}{r}
 7 \overline{) 5152} \quad (736 \\
 \underline{49} \\
 25 \text{ 1 Rem.} \\
 \underline{21} \\
 42 \text{ 2 Re.} \\
 \underline{42} \\
 0 \text{ 3 Re.}
 \end{array}$$

Ask how many times 7 can I have in 51? I can have 7 times; therefore I put 7 in the Quotient, and Multiply 7 (the Divisor) by 7 (the Quotient) the Product will be 49, which I set under 51. Then Subtract 49 from 51, and there remains 2; which I set under 9, and draw a line under it. 3dly; Make a prick under 5 (the third figure in the Dividend) and bring that Figure 5 down to 2 (the first Remainder,) making it 25. Then ask, How many times 7 can I have in 25? Answ 3 times; I set 3 in the Quotient, and Multiply (the Divisor) 7 by it, saying 3 times 7 is 21 (for the 2d Product) which set under 25. and Subtract 21 from 25, and there remains, 4; which I set under 21, and draw a line under it. 4thly, Make a prick under 2 (the last figure of the Dividend) and bring that figure 2 down to the 2d Remainder, 4, which makes it 42. Then I ask how many times 7 (the Divisor)

D I V I S I O N

33

Divisor) I can have in 42 ? 'twill be 6 times; I set 6 in the Quotient, and Multiply (the *Divisor*) 7 by it, saying, 6 times 7 is 42 (for the 3d *Product*) which set under 42, and subtract 1 from the other, 42 from 42, the Remainder will be 00. So is this Division ended, and the Quotient shew; that each mans part or share is just 736 l.

3. Let it be required to Divide 21 1048 by 37.

Set down the Numbers, as in the Margin, and seeing that 37 (the *Divisor*) is greater than 21 (the two first figures of the *Dividend*) I make a prick under 1, the third Figure. Then I seek how many times 37 can have in 211, or how many times 3 can I have in 21 ? I can have it 5 times, wherefore I put 5 in the Quotient, and multiply 37 the *Divisor* by 5, the *Product* will be 185, which I set under 211, and subtract 185 from 211, and there remains 26, which I set under it. See the Operation,

2dly. I make a prick under 0, and bring that 0 down to 26, making it 260, then I seek how many times 37 I can have in 260 (or how many times 3 in 26 ?) I find 7 times, and therefore I set 7 in the Quotient, and Multiply 37 by 7; the *Product* is 259, which I set under 260, and subtract it, the Remainder will be 1.

4thly, I make a prick under 4, and bring it down to 1, which makes it 14, I draw a line under it, and seek how many times 37 I can have in 14; but now the *Remainder* being less than the *Divisor*, I can have it never a time and therefore I put a 0, in the Quotient. And,

4thly, I make a prick under 8 (the last figure in the *Dividend*) and bring that 8 down to 14, making it 148 Then

$$\begin{array}{r}
 37 \overline{) 211048} \quad (5704 \\
 \underline{ 185} \\
 1 \text{ Product } 185 \\
 260 \quad 1 \text{ Remainder} \\
 \underline{ 259} \\
 2 \text{ Prod. } 259 \\
 148 \quad 2 \text{ \& 3 Rem.} \\
 \underline{ 148} \\
 3 \text{ Prod. } 148 \\
 000 \quad 4 \text{ Rem.}
 \end{array}$$

D I V I S I O N.

Then I seek how many times 37 I can have in 148 (or how many times 3 in 14) I find 4 times, which I put in the *Quotient*, and multiply 37 (the *Divisor*) by 4, & the *Product* will be 148, which set under 148, and subtracting it there from, there remains, 0. And the *Division* is ended.

Now if you would prove whether your *Division* be truly wrought, or not,

Multiply the *Quotient*,
By the *Divisor*,

5704
37

The *Product* will be
equal to the *Dividend*,

}

211048

Which proves your *Division* to be truly performed.

Of Reduction.

Although *Reduction* be no Rule of it self, but meerly wrought by *Multiplication* and *Division*, yet I shall not omit it, because it is useful and usually practised. To deliver some what concerning it, you must understand that *Reduction* teaches how to bring all *Great Denominations* into *Smaller*, and *Small* into *Greater*.

First, All *Great Denominations* are brought into *small* by *Multiplication*, as.

- * Pounds Multiplied by 20 are Shillings.
- Shillings Multiplied by 12 are Pence.
- Pence Multiplied by 2 are Half pence,
- Pence Multiplied by 4 are Farthings,
- Pounds Multiplied by 240 are Pence,
- Pounds Multiplied by 480 are Half pence,
- Pounds Multiplied by 960 are Farthings.

Secondly all *small Names* are brought into *great* by *Division*, as

Shillings

REDUCTION

Shillings Divided by 20, are Pounds,
 Pence Divided by 12, are Shillings,
 Half pence Divided by 2 are Pence,
 Farthings Divided by 4, are Pence,
 Pence Divided by 240 are Pounds,
 Half pence Divided by 480, are Pounds,
 Farthings Divided by 960, are Pounds.

Example 1. Let it be asked how many Shillings, Pence and Farthings there are in 1000*l*. 11*s*. 7*d*.

1000*l*.

20 Multiply

20000

11*s*. add.

20011 Shillings

12 Multiply

40022

20011

230132

7*d*. add

240139

4

960556 Farthings

In like manner you may Reduce all sorts of Numbers be they Weights, Measures, Time, or the like, having special regard to observe how many of the one Denomination do make one of the other, and so multiply or divide as before directed.

Example 2. In 960556 Farthings how many Pence, Shillings and Pounds.

4) 960556 (240139

.....

8

16

16

005

4

15

12

36

12) 240139 (20011

.....

24

0010

12

12

12

7*d*.

20) 20011 (1000

...

20

0011*s*.

The Rule of Three.

Here you see, 1st That great Denominations are brought into small (as Pounds, Shillings & Pence into Farthings) by Multiplication. And 2^{dy}, By the second Example, you see how small Denominations are brought into great (as Shillings, Pence and Farthings into Pounds) by Division. And, 3^{dly}, you see how Multiplication and Division prove each other.

Let this suffice for *Arithmetick*. Next, we come to the *Rule of Three*

The Rule of Three.

THE Rule of Three is commonly called *The Golden Rule*; and indeed it may rightly be so termed; for as Gold transcends all other Metals, so doth this Rule all others in *Arithmetick*.

Now for your better Information concerning it, you must observe, that there are *Three Numbers* known, by which a *Fourth* (that is unknown) may be found out, which bears like proportion to the *third*, as the *second* doth to the *first*.

Here also is to be noted, That if your Sums consist of sundry Denominations, the the *first* and *third* Number must be of the same Denomination, as also the *fourth* and the *second*. As thus. If the *first* number be *Yards*, the *third* likewise must be *Yards*; if the *second* be *Pence*, then the *fourth* must be *Pence* also.

But the greatest difficulty lyeth in the stating the Question. Therefore observe, *first*, That what you desire to know, or to be resolved in the Question, must be your *Third Number*: and you have commonly these Words before it, as *What cost?* *How long?* *How broad?* *How much?* *How deep?* &c.

2. Your Question being stated, bring your *first* and *third* Numbers into one Denomination.

3. Bring

The Rule of Three.

3. Bring your *second* into the left Name mentioned, or as low as you desire the Question to be answered in.

4. Observe whether your Third Number requires *More* or *Less*; if *More*, then multiply the middle Number by the greater of the two extremes, and divide by the *less*, and the Quotient answereth the Question.

But if it require *Less*, then multiply the Middle Number by the *less* of the two Extremes, and divide by the greater.

These two Words [*More*] or [*Less*] being well observed, the Scholar will understand what he doth, and needs not to make two distinct Rules of three, as most do.

As for Example,

If 4 Yards of Cloth cost 12 s. What will 6 Yards cost?

Here the two numbers of one kind are Four and Six, (viz, they both signify so many Yards) and Twelve Shillings in the same kind with the number sought; for the price of six Yards is sought.

Having placed my Numbers, I Multiply my second number (12) by the third Number 6 and the Product is 72, which I divide by the first Number 4, and the Quotient is 18, which shews that 6 Yards will cost 18 shillings. See the Operation.

If 4 Yards cost 12 s. What 6 Yards?

$$\begin{array}{r}
 12 \\
 \times 6 \\
 \hline
 72
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r}
 4 \overline{) 72} \begin{array}{l} 18 \end{array} \\
 \underline{4} \\
 32 \\
 \underline{32} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

Again, If 7 C. [7 hundred] of Paper cost 16 s. How much will 16 C. cost?

To Resolve which question, I consider that the Demand lying upon 16 C. it must be the third Number, and that of the same kind with it must be the first, viz, 7 C. and

The Rule of Three

61 *l.*, (being the same kind with the number sought) must be the second number in the Question, Wherefore I place down my Numbers, and work as before thus,

If 7 C. cost 21 *l.* What 16 C.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 16 \\
 \hline
 126 \\
 21 \\
 \hline
 336
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r}
 7 \overline{) 336} \quad (48 \\
 \underline{28} \\
 56 \\
 \underline{56} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

By this you see that 16 C. of Pepper will cost 48 Pounds.
 If 20 Sheep cost 13 *l.* 13 s. 4 d. what is that for every Sheep.

Turn the Shillings and Pounds into Pence, Thus
 Multiply 13 s. by 12 the Product is 156
 And 13 *l.* by 240, the Product is 3120
 To which add the 4 d.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 156 \\
 3120 \\
 4 \\
 \hline
 3280
 \end{array}$$

Then the Question will be If 10 Sheep cost 3280 Pence,
 What will 1 Sheep cost

If 10 cost 3280, What 1?

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1 \\
 \hline
 20 \overline{) 3280} \quad (164 \\
 \underline{20} \\
 80 \\
 \underline{80} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

Every

The Rule of Three.

Every Sheep will cost 146 Pence, which Pence being divided by 12 produces 12 s . 8 d . and so much each Sheep will cost.

Ques. But sometimes after the Division is ended, there is something remains. What must be done with it?

Ans. You must Multiply what so remains by the part of the next inferior Denomination, that are equal to an unit of the second Number in the Question, and the Quotient is of the same Denomination which the part by which you multiplied the Remainder, and is part of the Fourth Number which is sought.

Again. If any thing yet remain after this last Division is ended, multiply it by the part of the next Inferior Denomination, equal to an unit of the last Quotient, and divide the Product by the same Divisor, viz. the first Number in the Question, and the Quotient is still of the same Denomination with your Multiplier. Follow this Method until you have reduced your Remainder into the lowest Denomination.

An Example or two will make this Rule very plain, which take as follows,

If 13 Yards cost 21 l . what cost 27 Yards.

And there is yet a Remainder of 8 which multiply by 20 s . because the last Quotient was Pounds, and the Product is 160, which I divide by 13 (the first Number in the Question) and it quotes 12, which are 12 s .

And there is yet a Remainder of 4, which I multiply by 12 d . because the last Quotient was Shillings and the Product is 48, which I divide by 13 the

$$\begin{array}{r}
 21 \\
 27 \\
 \hline
 147 \\
 42 \\
 \hline
 13 \overline{) 567} \quad (43 \\
 \underline{52} \\
 47 \\
 \underline{39} \\
 \hline
 \text{Remain. } 8
 \end{array}$$

Art

The Rule of Three.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 13 \overline{) 160} \quad (12 \\
 \underline{13} \\
 30 \\
 \underline{26} \\
 \text{Remainder } 4 \\
 13 \overline{) 48} \quad (3 \\
 \underline{39} \\
 \text{Remainder } 9 \\
 13 \overline{) 36} \quad (2 \\
 \underline{26} \\
 \text{Remainder } 10
 \end{array}$$

first number, and the *Quotient* is 3 *d*.

But there is yet a Remainder of 9, what must be done with it? I multiply 9 by 4 *farthings*, because the last *Quotient* was Pence, the Product is 36, which I divide by 13, the *Quotient* is 2 *farthings*,

And there is yet a Remainder of 10, but may be omitted, because it is but 10 *thirtieths* of a Farthing,

And thus it appears, that if 13 Yards of Cloath cost 12 *l*, then 27 Yards of same will Cost 46 *l*, 12 *s*, 3 *d*, 2 *grs*, and 10 *thirtieths* of a Farthing.

You see here in the *Question*, the Third Number requires [*Ans*]. and therefore you must multiply the middle Number by the Letter of the two extremes.

If a Man will be finishing a piece of Work in 20 Days, How long will 12 Men be doing the same?

$$\begin{array}{r}
 20 \quad 3/2 \quad 0 \\
 \hline
 180 \\
 \hline
 144 \quad 0 \\
 \hline
 36 \quad 0
 \end{array}$$

This

The Rule of Three.

63

This Question is stated four several ways by which the one is a proof of the other,
See the Operation, as follows,

If 6 Men 10 Days, How long 12 Men?

$$\begin{array}{r} 10 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 12 \ 60 \ 0 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

If 12 Men 5 Days 6 Men?

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 6 \ 60 \ 120 \\ \hline 50 \end{array}$$

If 5 Days 12 Men 10 Days

$$\begin{array}{r} 12 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 10 \ 60 \ 120 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

If 10 Days 6 Men 5 Days?

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 \ 60 \ 120 \\ \hline 60 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 200 \\ 20 \\ \hline 400 \\ 320 \\ \hline 80 \end{array}$$

A Table for Buying and Selling anything by the Hundred.

<i>£</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>q</i>	<i>gr</i>	<i>£</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>q</i>	<i>gr</i>
0	1	0	02	4	3	1	3	17	0
0	2	0	04	8	3	2	3	19	4
0	3	0	07	0	3	3	4	01	8
1	0	0	09	4	3	4	4	04	0
1	1	0	12	8	4	1	4	06	4
1	2	0	14	0	4	2	4	08	8
1	3	0	15	4	4	3	4	11	0
2	0	0	18	8	4	4	4	13	4
2	1	1	01	0	10	1	4	15	8
2	2	1	03	4	10	2	4	18	0
2	3	1	05	8	10	3	5	00	4
3	0	1	08	4	11	0	5	02	8
3	1	1	10	8	11	1	5	05	0
3	2	1	12	0	11	2	5	07	4
3	3	1	15	0	11	3	5	09	8
4	0	1	17	4	12	0	5	12	0
4	1	1	18	8	12	1	5	14	4
4	2	2	02	0	12	2	5	16	8
4	3	2	04	4	12	3	5	19	0
5	0	2	06	8	13	0	5	01	4
5	1	2	09	0	13	1	6	03	8
5	2	2	11	4	13	2	6	06	0
5	3	2	13	8	13	3	6	08	4
6	0	2	16	0	14	0	6	10	8
6	1	2	18	4	14	1	6	13	0
6	2	3	00	8	14	2	6	15	4
6	3	3	03	0	14	3	6	17	8
7	0	3	05	4	15	0	7	00	0
7	1	3	07	8	15	1	7	02	4
7	2	3	10	0	15	2	7	04	8
7	3	3	12	4	15	3	7	07	0
8	0	3	14	8	16	0	7	09	4

If you buy any thing by the hundred, (that is, 112 lb.) you may by this Table know what it cost by the Pound; or if you buy any Commodity at so much the Pound, by this Table you may find how much it is by the Hundred.

Example 1

At 8 d. 3 gr. a Pound what is that by the great Hundred?

Look in the first Column of the Table for 8 d. 3 gr. & right against it in the 2d Column you will find 4 l. 1 s. 8 d. and so much it is by the Hundred.

Again, If a Hundred weight cost 3 l. 7 s. 8 d. what is that by the Pound?

Look in the Table for 3 l. 7 s. 8 d. in the 1st Column, and right against it in the 2d Column, you shall find 7 d. 1 gr. and so much it is by the Pound.

Example 2

Example 1:

One buys a Hundred Weight of a Commodity for 4*l*. 1*s*. 8*d*. which he retails again at 10*d*. the Pound, what doth he get by Selling a Hundred Weight.

A hundred Weight at 10*d*. the Pound, comes to 4*l*. 13*s*. 4*d*. from which take 4*l*. 1*s*. 8*d*. there remains 11*s*. 8*d*. and so much doth the Retailer gain.

The use of the following Table of Square Timber Measure.

THe Number of Inches, (or half Inches, which are signified by the blanks, as supposing your Timber to be 18 Inches and a half square, look for 18, the Blank under it signifies 18 and an half) being known of a square piece of Timber, enter the same in the 1*st*, or 5*th*, or 8*th* Column of

the Table, and against it is the Feet, Inches and 50*th* parts of an Inch that makes a Foot solid, and being thus taken out of the Table between a pair of Compasses, will readily shew the content of a piece of Timber squared.

In. Squa.	Feet.	Inch.	50 part.	In. Squa.	Inch.	50 part.	In. Squa.	Inch.	50 part.
1	36	0	00	11	11	3	21	3	46
2	23	0	35	12	12	00	22	3	37
3	16	0	00	13	11	3	23	3	28
4	11	9	02	14	10	32	24	3	20
5	9	0	00	15	9	25	25	3	13
6	7	1	17	16	8	41	26	3	9
7	5	9	6	17	8	11	27	3	00
8	4	9	6	18	7	34	28	2	44
9	4	0	00	19	7	6	29	2	38
10	3	4	45	20	6	37	30	2	33
11	2	11	13	21	6	17		2	28
12	2	6	36	22	5	49		2	23
13	2	3	00	23	5	35		2	18
14	1	11	46	24	5	17		2	14
15	1	9	17	25	5	3		2	10
16	1	7	7	26	4	40		2	6
17	1	5	14	27	4	31		1	49
18	1	3	34	28	4	17		1	46
19	1	2	14	29	4	6			
20				30					

A Table

A Table shewing how many Inches in length will make a Foot Solid of a Round Piece of Timber, the Girt being known, from one Foot to six.

Com. Inch	Inches.	Parts.	Com. Inch	Inches.	Parts.	Com. Inch	Inches.	Parts.
12	150	—	33	19	46	54	09	21
13	128	40	34	18	39	55	07	09
14	110	24	35	17	37	56	06	46
15	94	39	36	16	38	57	06	34
16	84	15	37	15	43	58	06	22
17	75	41	38	15	02	59	06	12
18	67	07	39	14	14	60	06	03
19	60	21	40	13	29	61	05	43
20	54	07	41	12	46	62	05	32
21	49	14	42	12	15	63	05	24
22	44	12	43	11	37	64	05	15
23	40	43	44	11	16	65	05	07
24	37	45	45	10	37	66	04	49
25	34	35	46	10	13	67	04	42
26	32	37	47	9	41	68	04	35
27	29	06	48	9	21	69	04	28
28	27	40	49	9	02	70	04	22
29	25	35	50	8	34	71	04	16
30	24	41	51	8	17	72	04	10
31	22	06	52	8	01			
32	21	30	53	7	37			
	11	11						

MEASURING.

57

The Use of the Table of Round Timber-Measure.

Inches	Inches	Feet
1	144	0
2	72	0
3	48	0
4	36	0
5	32	8
6	24	0
7	20	6
8	18	0
9	16	0
10	14	4
11	12	1
12	12	0
13	21	1
14	10	0
15	9	6
16	9	0
17	8	5
18	8	9
19	7	6
20	7	2
21	6	8
22	6	5
23	6	3
24	6	0
25	5	8
26	5	5
27	5	3
28	5	1
29	4	9
30	4	8

Example,

Suppose a Board be 10 Inches Broad, How much thereof in length will make a Foot? Look for 10 in the first Columne and over against the same is 14 Inches, & 4 10th parts, which shews, that fourteen Inches and almost half an Inch makes a Foot.

Paving, Painting and Plastering are measured by the Yard Square, being 9 square Feet. The common way is to multiply the length by the breadth in Feet and Inches, the Product thereof divide by 144, for Inches, to bring it into Feet.

A Court being paved, whose length is 16 Feet 4 Inches, and the Breadth 12 Feet 8 Inches, How many square Yards doth it contain? The length in Inches is 196, the breadth 152, which being multiplied produce 29792 Inches square, which divide by 144, the Quotient will be 206 & 8 9ths Feet, which divide again by 9, the Quotient will be 22 and 8 9ths Yards square in the said Court. If there had been 16 Inches more, there would have been just 23 Yards Square.

The same Method is to be observed in Measuring of Land, As will hereafter appear.

To measure by Gunter's Chain, you must observe, That this Chain is 4 Poles in length, or 22 Yards, or 66 Feet, or 792 Inches. It is divided into 100 Links, and every 10 Links

is a Brass Ring, for the more ready counting in Measuring, so that its no matter which end of the Chain goes foremost. But he that draws the Chain should carry in his hand ten small sticks to stick in the ground at every Chain's length, and he that follows the Chain should gather up the sticks.

Suppose the Length of a piece of ground be 9 Chains 50 Links, the Breadth 6 Chains 25 Links, How many Acres, Rods and Poles is there in this piece of Ground?

Length	9	50	Set the Numbers down, as herein the Margent, drawing a Line under them, Then Multiply one by the other, and the Product will be 593750. From which Product you must always cut off the five last Figures towards the right hand, with a dash of the Pen; then will the Product stand thus, 5193750. So is the 5 towards the left hand compleat Acres, and the 93750 hundred thousand parts of an Acre. Which 93750 being Multiplied by 4, (the number of Rods in an Acre) the Product will be 375000. From which
Breadth	6	25	
		4750	
		1900	
		5700	
Acres	5	193750	Product cut off 5 Figures towards the right hand, as before, and it will stand thus, 3175000: So is the 3 towards the left hand compleat Rods, and the 75000 hundred thousand parts of a Rod; which being Multiplied by 40 (the Number of Perches in a Rod) the Product will be 3000000; from which I cut off the five last Figures towards the Right hand, and the Product will stand thus, 30100000, and the 30 towards the left hand is the Number of Perches. And so the Area or Content of the whole piece will be 5 Acres, 3 Rods, and 30 Perches.
		4	
Rods	3	175000	
		40	Note, That if any length or breadth taken by the Chain the Links be under 10, add a Cypher to the left hand thereof, before you begin to Multiply. And whereas there was no
Poles	3	0100000	

Product cut off 5 Figures towards the right hand, as before, and it will stand thus, 3175000: So is the 3 towards the left hand compleat Rods, and the 75000 hundred thousand parts of a Rod; which being Multiplied by 40 (the Number of Perches in a Rod) the Product will be 3000000; from which I cut off the five last Figures towards the Right hand, and the Product will stand thus, 30100000, and the 30 towards the left hand is the Number of Perches. And so the Area or Content of the whole piece will be 5 Acres, 3 Rods, and 30 Perches.

Note, That if any length or breadth taken by the Chain the Links be under 10, add a Cypher to the left hand thereof, before you begin to Multiply. And whereas there was no

that

Of Guaging of Vessels.

69

being but Cyphers cut off from the 30 Poles (above) but if they had been Figures, as suppose 34762, there would want of a Pole so much as that Sum wants of 100000.

Of Guaging of Vessels.

THE Art of Guaging is little different from the measuring of Timber; for as a Foot of Timber is 1728 Cubical or square Inches, and as often as 1728 Inches are found in a Piece of Timber (be it Round or Square) so many Foot of Timber is contained in the Piece.

So in the Art of Guaging, the Gallon of Ale and Beer is agreed on to be 282 Cubical Inches, and the Wine Gallon 231, and the Gallon of Dry Measure 272 Inches.

Therefore so often as 282 square Inches are contained in any Vessel, round or square, so many Gallons of Ale or Beer the said Vessel will hold. The same is to be observed in Wine and Dry Measure, &c.

Note, That every Cubical Foot may contain 6 Gallons and almost a Pint of Ale or Beer.

Of Wine, 7 Gallons 2 Quarts, and almost a Pint.

A Cubical Foot of Dry-Measure may contain 6 Gallons, and a little above half a Gallon.

Suppose there is a square Timber to be Measured, in length 105 Inches. in breadth 76, and in depth 46 Inches, How many Square Inches is therein? as also how many Gallons or Barrels?

Multiply the Dimensions one in another, as is shewed in the first Example in Square-Timber-Measure, and the last Product gives 367080 Inches in the Tree: Which divide by 282, or Multiply by this Number 35461, as in this Example.

Cubic Inches in the Tree	367080
The Number given	35461

367080
2202480
1458320
1835400
2101240

Gallons 1301; 702380

And

And from this Product cut off 7 figures (*always*) or places to the Right-Hand, (which are the parts of a Gallon) and those on the Left-Hand are Gallons, as in this Example is 1301 Gallons.

Now, That the Parts of a Gallon is not considerable, if there happen to be a Cypher next the Gallons: But in that there is the Figure 7, which is the 7 tenth Parts of a Gallon; that is if a Gallon was divided into ten Parts, that is 7 parts thereof: or if the Figure 5 had been in the place of 7, it had been half a Gallon, because 5 is the half of 10; or if the 70 next the Gallons had been 75, it had been three quarters of a Gallon, because 75 is three quarters of a Hundred, &c.

Lastly, Divide 1301 Gallons, so cut off, by 36, (the Gallon in 2 Barrels of Beer, or by 32 in a Barrel of Ale) and the Quotient gives 26 Barrels, of Beer, and 5 Gallons remaining, and near three quarters of a Gallon.

Now to Gauge a round Tun, Tub or Furnace.

First, If your Tun, or the like, be of one Bigness or Breadth, both at top and bottom, find the Cube Inches therein contained, and reduce into Gallons, as before.

But if it be narrower at the Top than at the Bottom, or contrary, take the Breadth or Diameter of the Tun, a little above the middle of it, that is, next the widest end, if it be Taper.

Here follows a Table shewing the Interest due upon any Sum of Money, from One Pound to One Hundred Pounds, for 2, 4, 6, and 12 Month, at 8 per Cent.

The Use of the Table.

Find the Principal in the first Column, and against it is the Interest due for 2, 4, 6, and 12 Months.

If you desire to know the Interest for any Term not express'd in the Table, you must either add to or subtract from the Time that you desire to know. As, supposing you desire to know the Interest of 100 l . for six Months. 200 l . Interest of 2 Months and 4 Months together, and the Product is the Answer.

*A Table of Interest, at 8 per Cent,
from 20 s. to 100 l.*

Pounds	2 Mon.			4 Mon.			6 Mos.			12 Mon.		
	s.	d.	q.	s.	d.	q.	s.	d.	q.	s.	d.	q.
1	0	2	0	0	6	1	0	2	1	7	0	
2	0	4	0	1	6	3	1	7	0	3	2	1
3	0	6	0	1	7	0	2	4	3	4	9	2
4	1	0	3	2	1	1	3	2	1	6	4	3
5	1	4	0	2	8	0	4	0	0	8	0	0
6	1	7	0	3	2	1	4	9	2	9	7	0
7	1	10	1	3	8	3	5	7	5	11	2	1
8	2	1	2	4	3	0	6	4	3	12	9	2
9	2	4	3	4	9	2	7	2	1	14	4	3
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
10	0	2	8	0	5	4	0	8	0	0	16	0
20	0	5	4	0	10	8	0	16	0	1	12	0
30	0	8	0	0	16	0	1	4	0	2	8	0
40	0	10	8	1	4	4	1	12	0	3	4	0
50	0	12	4	1	6	8	2	0	0	4	0	0
60	0	16	0	1	12	0	2	8	0	4	16	0
70	0	18	8	1	17	4	2	16	0	5	12	0
80	1	4	4	2	2	8	3	4	0	6	8	0
90	1	4	0	2	8	0	3	12	0	7	4	0
100	1	5	8	2	13	4	4	0	0	8	0	0

*The Rates of Post-Letters in North-America,
settled by Act of Parliament.*

ALL single Letters passing from *London*, pays 12 *d.* Pacquets 6 *s.* per Ounce.

From *London* to *New-York*, 1 *s.* Pacquets 4 *s.* per Ouz.

From *New-York* to *Newport*, *Boston*, *Portsmouth*, or to *Annapolis* in *Maryland*, and from said Places to *New-York*, 1 *s.* Pacquets 4 *s.* per Ounce.

From *New-York* to *Perth-Amboy*, or from or to any other Place not exceeding 100 Miles, 6 *d.* Pacquets 2 *s.* per Ounce.

From *Perth-Amboy* to *Burlington*, or any other Place not exceeding 60 Miles, 4 *d.* Pacquets 1 *s.* 4 *d.* per Ounce.

From *New-York* to *New-London*, and to *Philadelphia*, & *contr.*, 9 *d.* Pacquets 3 *s.* per Ounce.

From *New-York* to *Salem*, *Ipswich* and *Piscataway*, or to *Williams-Burgh* in *Virginia*, 15 *d.* Pacquets 5 *s.* per Oun.

From *New-York* to *Charles-Town* in *Carolina*, 18 *d.* Pacquets 6 *s.* per Ounce.

From any part of the *West-Indies* to *New-York*, or from or to any the Places aforesaid, not exceeding 60 Miles, 4 *d.* Pacquets 10 *d.* per Ounce.

And all Letters and Pacquets of Letters directed to or from on Board any Ship in any Port within his Majesty's Dominions, shall pay 1 *d.* over and above the Rates above specified.

N.E. The Post to pay nothing for passing Ferries in *North-America*.

*A Table of Interest, at six per Cent.
from 20 s. To 100 l.*

Periods.	2 Mon.			4 Mon.			6 Mon.			12 Mon.		
	s.	d.	q.	s.	d.	q.	s.	d.	q.	s.	d.	q.
1	0	2	2	0	5	0	0	7	1	1	2	2
2	0	4	3	0	9	2	1	2	2	2	4	3
3	0	7	1	1	2	2	1	9	2	3	7	1
4	0	9	2	1	7	0	2	4	3	4	9	2
5	0	11	0	2	0	0	3	0	0	6	0	0
6	0	12	0	2	5	0	3	7	1	7	2	2
7	0	14	3	2	9	2	4	2	2	8	4	3
8	1	7	1	3	2	2	4	9	2	9	7	1
9	1	9	2	3	7	0	5	4	3	10	9	2
	l. s. d.			l. s. d.			l. s. d.			l. s. d.		
10	0	2	0	0	4	0	0	6	0	0	12	0
20	0	4	0	0	8	0	0	12	0	1	4	0
30	0	6	0	0	12	0	0	18	0	1	16	0
40	0	8	0	0	16	0	1	4	0	2	8	0
50	0	10	0	1	0	0	1	10	0	3	0	0
60	0	12	0	1	4	0	1	16	0	3	12	0
70	0	14	0	1	8	0	2	2	0	4	4	0
80	0	16	0	1	12	0	2	8	0	4	16	0
90	0	18	0	1	16	0	2	14	0	5	8	0
100	1	0	0	2	0	0	3	0	0	6	0	0

IF You would know the Interest of 20 Pounds, for 2 Months, 4 Months, 6 Months, or 12 Months. Look for 20 Pounds in the 1st Column, and in the next Column under 2 Months is 4 s. for 4 Months is 8 s. for 6 Months is 12 s. and for 12 Months is 2 l. 4 s. and so of all the rest.

Of Women, Children and Servants.

BY the Court of *England*, a Woman at her Marriage becomes wholly the Man's, together with all her moveable Goods; and if Goods be given to a Married Woman, they all immediately become her Husbands: She cannot Let, Set, Sell, Give away or Alienate any thing without her Husbands Consent, nor her very Apparel, which at her Husbands decease goes to the Executor or Administrator of her Husband (excepting her necessary ~~Expence~~) which, with the Consent of her Husband she may give by Will, not otherwise by our *English* Laws.

The Wife, after her Husbands Death, (having no Joynure settled before Marriage) may Challenge the Third part of his Yearly Rents and Free-Lands for her Life, and also the Thirds of the Rents and Free-Lands which he sold in his Life-time, if she did not consent to the same by a Fine; but she can claim no Thirds of such Lands as her Husband buys, when he has sold them again, and dyeth, if he puts another Persons Name in the Deed, besides himself, when he bought those Lands. But if her Husband dye without a Will in Writing (leaving no Child) she may claim the Thirds, (as above) and the Third Part of his Goods forever, and the other Two Thirds of his Goods go to the next Kindred.

But if she be the Wife of a Free-man of the City of *London* (he dying without Will, leaving no Child, as before) she will Challenge by Law, Three Parts of Four of her Husbands Goods and Chattles, and one Third of the Profits of his Free Lands for Life, the Goods forever.

The Husband must answer for his Wifes Faults, if she Wrong another by her Tongue, or by Trespass, he must make Satisfaction; and pay the Debts that she contracted, except he have given publick Notice that they shall not touch Her.

A Woman cannot hope to have the Thirds of her Husbands Land, which he Mortgaged before Marriage, until the Money is paid

sey's paid, and Mortgage be Cancelled.

If a Man and Wife are joynt Purchasers of Land, to them and their Heirs, and the Husband dyes without Will, the Wife may sell the Land without the consent of their Children.

The Woman that kills her Husband is to be burnt alive.

A Wife cannot be a Witness for or against her Husband, they two being so much One.

If a Woman brings forth a Child begotten by a former Husband (or by any other) before Marriage, but born after Marriage to the present Husband, this latter must own the Child, ~~and~~ Child shall be Heir at Law.

If a Woman brings forth a Child during her Husbonds long Absence, ~~though~~ he be for some years, yet if he have lived all the time ~~in~~ this Island (*England*) he must Father that Child; and if that Child be her first born Son, he shall inherit that Husbonds Estate, if entail'd, or left without Will.

A Woman that doth not hear of her Husband for Seven Years together, may Marry another Man.

The Woman upon Marriage looseth not only the Power over her Person, and her Will, and the Property of her Goods, but her very Name, and her own is wholly laid aside, which is not observed in *France* and other Countries.

But then, as the Wife doth participate of her Husbonds Name, so likewise of his Condition: If he be a Duke, she is a Dutches; if he be a Knight, she is a Lady; if he of an Alien be made a Denizon, she is, *ipso facto*, so too. If a Free Man Marry a Bond Woman, she is also Free during the Coverture. And such is the good Nature of *English Men* towards their Wives, such is their Tenderness and Respect, that they put them to no Drudgery nor Hardship, as in some other Countries, but on the contrary, give them the Right Hand every where, and the Uppermost Place at Table and else-where. So that (generally speaking) *English Women* are the most happy Women in the World.

A Man and his Wife are so fast joined by our Law, that they may not be wholly parted by our Law, but only by Sentence of a Judge, for Adultery, &c.

Of Children.

AS Husbands have an absolute Authority over their Wives and Estates, so Fathers have a more absolute Authority over Children. A Father may give all his Estate (not entailed) to any one Child, (or to any other Person) and leave the rest of his Children. The Consideration of which keeps some Children in Awe.

A Son, at the Age of 14 may chuse his Guardian, may be an Executor, may consent to Marriage (if he be not an Apprentice) may, by Will, give his Goods and Chatties, and may Covenant and become Bound for Necessaries, as Food, Rayment, Schooling, &c.

At 21 he is said to be of full Age, may then make any Contract, may sell Lands, and may sit in Parliament, which in other Countries he cannot do till the Age of 25.

A Daughter at 7 years may consent to Marriage, though she may afterwards dissent. At 9 she may consent to a Joynure.

At 12 she is able to Confirm her former Consent to Marriage, and if at that Age she dissent not, she is bound: She may at that Age bequeath her Goods by Will, become Bound for Necessaries, &c.

At the Age of 13 she may receive her Lands into her own Possession. At 21 she may Let, Sell or bequeath her Lands by Will.

The Eldest Son Inherits all his Fathers Lands (if the Father dye without a Will) and to the Younger Children are disposed Goods and Chatties; and because they have no Lands, they are commonly put out to learn some Profession or Trade.

If there be no Son, the Lands, as well as Goods, are equally divided amongst the Daughters.

A Man Marrying a Wife having Land, and she dyeth, leaving a Child that's heard to Cry, and dyeth, the Man shall have the Lands for his Life. This is called *The Corrotesy of England*.

Of Servants.

Servants in the *Saxon* Times were properly Slaves, and very many Instances of their Manumission are still extant; but now Slavery is entirely taken away, and every Servant Man or Woman (excepting Apprentices, who are for a Term of Years) are properly hired Servants, commonly for a Year, at the end whereof they be free, giving Warning three Months before, and may hire themselves to other Masters, only it is accounted unfriendly to take another Servant before leave given by his or her former Master.

All Servants are subject to be corrected by their Masters or Mistresses, and Resistance in a Servant is punished with a severe Penalty.

Formerly Servants were bought and sold in the Market in *England*, like as we buy & sell Negro Slaves here in *America*, but now (since *Christianity* prevailed, if a Foreign Slave is brought into *England*, is upon landing, *ipso facto*, free from Slavery, but not from ordinary Service.

Of Religion.

Christianity was very Early Planted in *England*, but when or by Whom is uncertain, probably in the beginning of the second Century. In *Tertullians* Time, even that part of *Britain* which did not own the *Roman Yoke*, submitted to the Name of *Christ*.

The *British Church*, upon the Invasion of the *Saxons*, was, with its People, driven into the *W-Perth Parts*, as *Wales*, *Gloucestershire*, *Somersetshire*, &c. where it continued. When *Augustine* the Monk converted *Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, and his People to *Christianity* (in the year after *Christ* 596,) by Order of his Master Pope *Gregory* the Great, he laboured to bring the *British Clergy* to own the Pope's Authority, and himself as their Arch-Bishop, which they refusing to do, the *Saxons*, at his Instigation, fell upon the *British Nation*, and kill'd 1200 Monks and Priests. &c.

The Saxons, and after them the Normans, owned five Popes Authority; and after King *John* had basely subjected his Crown to the Pope, *England* was, till the Reformation, one of the Tainted Countries that any where submitted to the *Roman Yoke*. Our Parliaments indeed, did many Times exert themselves vigorously, but still the *Papal Yoke* lay heavy upon the Shoulders of the whole Nation, till *Henry* the Eighths Time, when *Luther's* Preaching had alarmed the the greatest part of the Kingdoms of the North, and inspired them with almost an Universal Consent to set their Conscience free from the *Romish Tyranny*, *England* joyned in with the general Torrent. And it was time for *England* to look about them, when Bigotry had so far prevailed in the Nation, that the lazy Monks and Priests by their pretended Piety, had so far prevailed upon the foolish People as to engross into their hands the greatest part of the Riches of the Nation: for in King *Henry* the VIII's Time, when he threw off the Popes Authority, the Poor Humble Clergy were possessed of but Fourteen Millions, One Hundred and One Thousand, Five Hundred Fifty Eight Pounds per Annum, which is in other words, that the Priests were Masters of above Fourteen parts of Twenty of the Riches of the whole Nation; and the other six Parts were kindly left for King, Lords and Commons, as does appear at large in a Book printed at *London* in the year 1717, entitled, *A Summary of all the Religious Houses in England and Wales*, and it is not only in *England* that the Clergy do enhance the Riches of the World to themselves, but in all Countries where they can prevail with the Power Secular to assist them. A famous instance of which we have from a Calculation taken by the great Duke of *Tuscany* himself in his own Dominions, where the Priesthood were found to enjoy Seventeen Parts in Twenty of the whole Land. And from that Profitable Religious Mission, That to give to the Church and Clergy towards God, and such as would Atone for a Multitude of Sin. &c. did the Founder of the Order of *St. Bernard* multiply to himself so great Riches (though at the same time the same Saint enjoyed Poverty to his Disciples,) that in his own Time

that he erected Twelve Monasteries, and gave himself the Humble Title of *Patriarch of the Sacred Religion, Abbot of the Sacred Monastery of Mount Cassin, Duke and Prince of all Abbots and Religious, Vice-Chancellor of the Kingdom of both the Sicilies, of Jerusalem and Hungary, Count and Governor of Campania, and Terra de Lavoro, and of the Maritima Province, Vice-Emperor and Prince of Peace.* The above-mentioned Monastery of Mount Cassin so Renounced the World as to be possessed of but *Four Bishopricks, Two Ducies, Twenty Counties, Thirty Six Cities, Two Hundred Castles, Three Hundred Territories, Four Hundred and Forty Villages, Three Hundred and Six Farms, Twenty Three Sea-Ports, Thirty Three Islands, Two Hundred Mills, and One Thousand Six Hundred Sixty-Two Churches.* This was their holy Poverty. And thus you see how spiritually, the pretended Followers of St. Peter reneged from the World, and the Poms & Vanities thereof! These were the humble Priests, from whom our gallant King Henry the 2d received the Discipline of Eighty Lashes, for having (like an Undutiful Son of the Church) dared to contend in Power with Thomas a Becket, whose Scurrup he had before been obliged to hold, whilst that Black Prelate Mounted!

When our Kings were thus managed by the Priests, it was no wonder if the common People submitted their Necks to the same Priestly Yoke of Slavery.

And tho' the Reformation is now advanced, and the Eyes of People are opened, & they have (in part) thrown off these Yokes and Shackles in which their Fore-Fathers were bound, yet it is to be feared the debauched part of our Clergy seeing the Grandeur and Luxury in which the Romish Clergy swim, are longing after these Onions of Egypt, and desire this Papal Power and Wealth, which would let them be great Sovereigns, and cause Princes to become the Tools of Priests, as is too manifest by their Actions of late years.

But waving this Digression, let's Return to King Henry the 8th, who having Abolished the Popes Supremacy in England, he seized upon all the Monasteries and Religious Houses, and divided their Lands amongst the Nobles and Gentry; but in other Articles of Religion, he continued

Papists, and the Reformation went on but slowly; but in King *Edward* the sixth's Reign it gain'd more ground, and the superstitions of *Papery* were almost abolished. He dyes, and then Queen *Mary* coming to the Crown, *Papery* was again Revived, and during the five years that she Reigned, above Five Hundred *Protestants* were burnt for their *Con-
fessing to Papery*. She dyes.

Queen *Elizabeth* succeeds, and favours the *Protestants*, in her Reign Religion was settled as it now continues in the National Church; *Protestant Bishops* were placed in the room of *Papist Bishops*, and the inferior Clergy that would Conform, (and others that were Ordained) were settled in the several Parishes through-out *England*. In her Reign the Articles of Religion were appointed, a Liturgy was Enacted to be Observed in the Church, and a Book of Canons was set forth.

In this Queens Reign, as well as in later Reigns, several other Persuasions did arise in *England*, making some further Progress of Reformation, and Dissented from the National Church. Which Dissenters now go under the Denomination of *Presbyterians*, *Independents*, *Baptists* and *Quakers*, who, by reason of several Acts of Parliament chiefly intended against the *Papists*, suffered great Persecutions at several Times. But since the Happy Revolution, by an Act of the first year of K. *William* and Q. *Mary*, his Majesty's Dissenting Subjects were Exempted from the Penalties of certain Laws therein mentioned. So that now no Man is molested upon the account of his Religion.

The *Papists* are not now very Numerous in *England*, those that are, chiefly abound in *Lancashire*, *Staffordshire* and *Salisbury*. They are generally very Zealous in their way, and very intent upon gaining Proselytes, for which reason it has been thought advisable to put some Check to their Progress, and yet they are allowed greater Freedom than any *Protestants* are allowed in *Roman Catholic Countries*.

The *Presbyterians* and *Independents*, how widely soever they formerly differ'd among themselves, there is now very little difference between them. In the Doctrinal part of Religion they agree with the Church of *England*, as her
Doctrines

Doctrines are set down in the 39 *Articles of Religion*: The Differences lie chiefly in the outward Administration of Ecclesiastical Government; viz. who shall appoint the Governors of the Church, and what Subordination there shall be, or shall not be between them. The *Presbyterians* allow of no such Subordination in the Person of their Ministers; but then they teach, That every Minister ought to be Obedient to the Class under which he lives, and that the Power of Ordination ought to reside in the Class.

The next is the *Anabaptists* or *Baptists*. The great Contrary Doctrine of these Men is their entire Disallowance of *Infant Baptism*; and in their Baptizing of *Adult Persons* they constantly make use of Dipping. In appointing Pastors and Teachers they make use of Laying on of Hands. And some of them observe the Jewish Sabbath.

The last Society that we shall mention, is the *Quakers*. These are a distinct Sect from all the other Dissenters, differing in their Deportment, Salutation, Speech and Habit, and (at least) seem to differ in Principles and Doctrine, as well as Church Discipline, from both the Church of England and the other Dissenters. They first appeared in *Lancashire* in *Old England*, about the year 1650. One of the first of them was *George Fox*, he was an illiterate Man, yet wrote many Books, Travelled and Preached in many Places and Countries, and suffered much: He got a great Reputation among this People, and was esteemed one of the Chief of them. When he first appeared he was accused of Blasphemy, but was acquitted on Trial. These People underwent great sufferings upon account of their Profession, and have been accused by their Adversaries with a Denial of the Fundamentals of Christianity, which Charge they have always deny'd: But they being an illiterate People at first, there has dropt some unwarrantable Expressions (as some think) in some of their former Books, which they now seem to correct, and by their late Writings and Preaching they seem to own all the Fundamentals of Christianity. The best account we have of their Principles is in a Book, entitled, *An Apology for the true Christian Divinity, as held forth by the People called Quakers*, writ by *Robert Barclay*, which he dedicated to King

Chapter the 1d: Some who have read over that Apology, think it to be a Charitable and Reasonable System; for many are of Opinion, that it solves the numerous Difficulties raised by other Sects, and by Turns shews all parts of Scripture to be Uniform and Consistent. And as Sir *Isaac Newton* (by allowing him Gravitation) has accounted for all the Phenomena of Nature; so if we allow to Mr. *Barclay* those Operations of the Spirit which the *Quakers* pretend to feel and experience, and which he says every Man in the World has and may feel, if he waits and watches its Motions, and does not suppress them; Then we think all the Janglings, vain Questioning, numerous Superstitions and various Oppressions which have Plagued the World, would cease and be at End. And notwithstanding all that has been writ or said against this Sect, yet upon long and due Inspection into the Occumency of that People, they are found to be Ingenuous, Industrious, Modest, Intelligent and Vertuous, To be animated with the most Beneficent Principles of any Sect which has yet appeared amongst us: They seem to have a Comprehensive Charity to the whole Race of Mankind, & deny the Mercies of God to None. They publicly own, that an Universal Liberty is due to all, are against Inquisitions of every kind, and yet have all along patiently submitted to many themselves, and, perhaps, are the only Party whose Practices, (as a Sect) correspond with their Principles.

They have no Clergy amongst them, that is, Men that are chosen, appointed or bred to Preach, yet they have many Preachers, and some of them of excellent Parts. They pretend to Preach and Pray as the holy Spirit of God moves and assists them. They say, That as the Rays of the Sun in the Firmament do extend to the Earth to comfort, nourish, and revive all things thereon, so Christ Jesus by the Emanations of his Spirit, Light and Life, flows into the hearts of all true believers (who wait and watch for its Motions & Operations) and has the like effect upon such, as the Sun hath on the Earth. And (they say) when this Spirit of God and Christ, this Grace of God, or Light of Christ, has had its thorough Operations, to break the stony heart, and to cleanse and sanctify the same, That then this same Grace

and Spirit of God and Christ draws and inclines many to Teach, Instruct, Reprove, Admonish and Exhort others, both as to Life and Doctrine, and to be Obedient to this inward Teacher and Instructor, which, through Faith in Christ will cleanse and sanctify them, and by which they may work out their Salvation. And this (they say) is the True Call to the Ministry.

They are a distinct Political Body of People; governed with great Regularity by Laws of their own making, and hold the strictest Correspondence of any Society now in being, and there appears to be a more particular Love and Respect, and more Hospitality among them than there is in any other Society in Christendom.

For the first Ten years after their Appearance, in the World, many of them in their Meetings were seized with strange Shakings and Convulsions, but these Motions are not now common among them. But from these Sicknesses and Quakings that were then amongst them, one Justice Bennet (a Persecutor of them) in the year 1650. out of Derision, gave them the Name of *QUAKERS*, which they have never taken to themselves, but give themselves the Name of *Friends*, or *Friends of the Truth*.

At first they had no such thing as Church Government, but every Man was left to the Readings and Guidance of the Spirit of God within him, or *Light within*. But as they grew Numerous, they saw a Necessity for settling Church Government, by which they form'd themselves into a Regular Body, and now observe a stated Discipline, in which (without any thing like Co-ercion) they are united, and understand the state of one another, as well, if not better than any Society of Men whatsoever in Christendom.

Their Meetings (in which they act as a Society) are of several sorts *viz. Monthly, Quarterly, Yearly, Second-Days Meetings*, and *Meetings for Sufferings*.

Their *Monthly* and *Quarterly-Meetings* are held in the several Counties in which they live (both in Europe and America) according as their Settlements are more or less Numerous. In their *Monthly Meetings* they take care of their Poor, take care to Reconcile Differences, examine into

Marriages, as to the Parties being clear of others, and having consent of Parents, &c. and enquire into the Conversation of those that profess to be of their Society; as likewise how far their Rules and Orders are Observed; Who Marry by the Priest, pay Tythes, use carnal Weapons, or the like, and accordingly Censure or Encourage. In these Meetings they make their Monthly Collections for the Poor, and other Services. Of all which they keep Registers in Books kept for that purpose.

From the *Monthly Meetings* there is Appeals & References to the *Quarterly Meetings*, which consist of the Members of several Monthly Meetings meeting together every three Months.

From these *Quarterly Meetings* Appeals lie, and References had to the *Yearly Ones* here in *America*, and from ~~these~~ Accounts of the State of their Church Affairs are given to the *Yearly Meeting at London*, which is constantly held in *William-Street*. Thither Deputies come from all Parts of *Great Britain, Ireland, Holland, Germany*, and the *American Plantations*. To this *Yearly Meeting* are Transmitted Accounts (from their *Monthly and Quarterly Meetings*) of all material Matters relating to their Church-Affairs, all the World over. Here Directions are given concerning Friends' Behaviour relating to *Paying Tythes, Using the Carnal Weapons, Plain Language, Plain Habit, &c.* as also concerning Dispersing of Eocks, &c. Here the *Publick Stock* (which now is very considerable) is Audited; and here Directions are given for the Redemption of their Friends who are taken Captive into *Algiers*, or else-where. And here proper Directions are given to the Deputies for them to observe and communicate to their respective Meetings when they come home. And from this Meeting they also send a *Yearly Epistle* to all their Sentinels, giving Admonitions proper to the Occasion, to be Read in all their *Quarterly and Monthly Meetings*.

The *Second Days - Meeting* is a standing Committee residing in *London*, which meets every *Monday* in the year; Their Business is to attend every Exigency relating to the Body of that People, from one *Yearly Meeting* to another;

but

Conclusion of the Second Part

more particularly they are to Examine, Approve and License all Books to be Printed or Reprinted, &c.

The Meeting of Sufferings is the most Ancient Meeting they have, relating to Church-Affairs; it was Erected in Time of Persecution; Their chief business is to receive Complaints out of all Parts of Great Britain from their Friends who suffer on account of their Religion, and to take care for their Relief, by sending them Money, or soliciting their Causes above, or both, and have a Fund to carry on this Affair.

Although some of the foregoing Particulars may seem to be foreign to the design of this Book, yet we presume it may be of some Service to inform our Youth of some few of the Customs and Usages of the Kingdom to which we belong, as also of the Religious Societies therein, which Accounts are impartially related, without Favour or Affection to one Party more than another, according to the best of our Understanding, Enquiry and Observation. And so We shall conclude this Second Part of our Young Mans Companion.

The Third Part shall contain necessary Instructions with Copies of Letters, which may inform our Youth of the Method of Writing and Inditing the same. In the Performance of which, We advise our Youth, 1st, To observe to Spell Words truly. 2^{dly}, To make great or Capital Letters in their proper Places. 3^{dly}, To observe Stops and Points. And, 4^{thly}, To alter and vary their Words from the following Copies, as the Matter or Occasion may require.

When Words we want, Love teacheth to Indite,
And what we bl:sh to Speak, she bids us Write.



PART III.

The Young Secretary's Guide,
Instructing him in Writing & Inditing Letters
upon most Subjects, whether Trade, Traffick
or otherwise, &c.

AS Arithmetick is Universally Useful in Managing
Affairs in the World, so we also find that the Art of
Writing and Inditing, in all Ages, has proved a
more than common Benefit to Mankind, in relation to his pre-
sent Occasions, and the bettering his Understanding and Judg-
ment, by giving him an Insight into Things (perhaps of the
greatest Consequence imaginable) which would otherwise un-
avoidably have escaped his Knowledge; for, consequently,
without Writing, (or a Continuation of Divine Inspiration)
not only the Civil, but Sacred Transactions of former Times
must have sat in Oblivion. As this Art (I say) has been
Advancing so many ways beyond Expression, even of Man
himself, in whom it has all along raised such Wisdom and
Administration, so immediately does it show its Serviceableness in
negotiating and managing important Affairs thro' out the ha-
bitable World, especially in all Civilized Nations, where
Traffick, Trade or Commerce relating to the Profit, Pleasure
or well being of Human Society, take place, or where the Ne-
cessity of Consulting with one another (at the greatest
Distance) is requisite and innumerable and since this is done
in the present Satisfaction of Empire, Kingdoms, States and
Provinces, by Letters, whose Influences effectually create the
same Effect and right Understanding as if the Sender or Writer
were present; And since Letters are prized upon by all un-
derstanding Men to be the maintainers of Love, Amity and
Concordance, I shall therefore here present you with some
Copies

Copies of Letters.

83

Copies of Useful and Necessary Letters, adapted to the Affairs and Occasions, that may happen. And herein you are to Observe, That

All Letters should begin with Declaration
Of Friendly Titles, as a Preparation.
Saluting them with Love and Commendation,
As they are in Esteem, or in Relation;
Then to the Matter needful, short and plain,
They should proceed in, as being the main
Of their then Writing, which when done, to cease,
And wind up all with words of Love and Peace,
Concluding, as unto their Friends they stand,
In humbleness. Thine, when they them Command;
Subscribing those their Letters with their Hand,
And for their Superscription, on th' Out-side,
The Name and Place where now their Friends abide.

A Letter from one at School, to his Father.

Honoured Father;

MY Humble Duty unto you presented, giving you all hearty Thanks for all your Love and Kindness manifested unto me. I make bold at this time to present you with a few Lines, being the fruits of my Labour, and do hope, in time, to be better accomplished to give you an account of my Proceedings. In the mean time crave your Acceptance of this, it coming from

Your Obedient and Dutiful Son,

A. B.

Another, from one at School, to his Friend.

Worthy Sir;

Having gained some skill in the Art of Writing, think it my Duty to present you with some Fruits thereof, as a humble Gratulation and thankful Remembrance of your great Love and Respect shew'd to me, from time to time; hoping

Copie of Letters.

hoping it may gain esteem and acceptance with you, do,
with brevity, yet with all Humility, rest, subscribing my self,
Your Obliged Friend and Humble Servant,

C. D.

A Letter of Entreaty, from a Son, to a Father.

Dear Honour'd Father;

I Send this Letter as an humble Suiter on my behalf (altho' I must confess, no Merit in me (did not your tender Affection plead my Cause) could ever have deserved what I have already received) to intreat you to procure me those necessary Cloaths and Books, of which I gave you an account the last time I had an opportunity to send you a Letter. But in this, as in all other Things, I submit to your Pleasure and Discretion, and hereby offer you my humble Duty and Thankfulness (which is all the Return my tender years are as yet, capable to make) for the many Favours of Love that you have extended to me. I shall not further trouble you at this time, but, as in Duty bound, subscribe my self

Your Most Obedient and Dutiful Son,

E. F.

A Letter from a Scholar to his Parents.

Dear Father and Mother;

After my most humble Duty to you, and my dear Love to my Brothers and Sisters, and to my Uncle and Aunt and Cousins, hoping you are all in good Health, as I am, and my Master, and the rest of his Family are at this Time, (Thanks be to God) These are to let you know, that I Received your Letter dated the 6th of this Instant June, for which, and also for the many Testimonies of your Love, I return you hearty Thanks; and hope, that happy Progress already made in my Learning, may, in the end, answer your careful Expectations, and in some measure requite your Care and Tenderness towards me. I beg your Prayers to God for his Blessing on my weak Endeavours, that you, at length, may reap the Harvest of your Expectations, with joy and have the Glory. I remain

Your Dutiful Son, N. W.

A Letter of Intreaty from a Daughter.

SIR;

MY Long Absence from you and my dear Mother, has not been a little tedious to me, tho' I have not been wanting to comfort my self, as much as the Discretion of my Tender Years will allow, with the frequent Communication of your Health and Welfare, by way of Letters, or otherwise; for the continuance of which I am not forgetful to offer up my Vows and Prayers to him who is able to continue them; yet being separated from you almost in my Infancy, I cannot but fancy, that returning to you again, would raise in me a greater Joy. (altho' where I am, I want for nothing that is convenient, nor am I insensible, that it is for my good you send me abroad, especially, that by Learning, I may (as I grow in years) grow likewise in Understanding. But however, Sir, I hope it would not much prejudice me, if you would be pleased to grant me leave to come Home for a time, in which time I should not neglect to make a farther Progress in what I am now studiously. But knowing my Duty not to dispute your good Pleasure, I shall no further insist upon it, but rather, if I have offended, beg your Pardon for what I have written, and remain to be disposed of, upon all accounts, as you in your Wisdom shall see convenient. I am

Your Dutiful Daughter

G. H.

A Letter of Intreaty to continue Abroad.

Honoured Sir;

I Have received your Letter, wherein I find you have laid your Commands upon me to return Home. And though it is not for me to dispute them, yet, I must not refuse to permit me humbly to assure you, I am so sensible of the Advantages I have gained since I have been abroad, both in Learning and other Qualifications, that I cannot but imagine, were you

N

file, not only of what I have already gained, but what I may further acquire by a longer Continuance, you would rather wish my Abjuration, than any ways be desirous to put a stop to my Advancement, a Progress in what I am so well instructed. Wherefore, let me intreat you, Sir, Not to be Offended, if I ever leave to stay where I am, only so long as to receive a few Letters from you, in which, whatever your Pleasure shall be, without any further Delay, my very Obedience shall speak how much I honour so good a Father. So hoping you will condescend to grant this one Request, I subscribe myself,

Your Obedient and Dutiful Son,

W. T.

A Letter of Excuse to a Father and Mother.

Honoured Father and Mother;

May 13, 1727.

I will Report that you have heard of me, I suppose, comes from some of my School-fellows, who either by my Happiness, or by aggravating my Faults, would be thought to seem less Criminal themselves; though I must confess, I have been too Remiss in my Studies; And when I consider the Time and Credit I have lost thereby, the first being irrecoverable, my double Diligence for the future, I hope, will regain the last, and my Deportment be such, that I may, in truth, subscribe my self,

Your Dutiful Son,

Jarvis Mendons.

A Son's Return of Thanks for good Education.

Most Kind Parents;

June 3. 1727.

I Am constrained, as an humble acknowledgement of my Gratitude, often to trouble you with my Epistles, as being the only Requital I am (as yet) capable of rendering you for the many Benefits and Advantages I have received at your hands; but above all, for your prudent Fore-sight in bringing me to the Knowledge of those Things which have seasoned my Young Years with the Fear of God, and various

of Understanding, and will, past all adventure, render me acceptable on sundry Occasions, with God's Blessing; wherefore I must applaud that compelling Goodness in you, by which you even Obliged me to persevere in Learning what I had begun; though then, indeed, (not discerning what I should afterwards reap thereby) I imputed it to you as Harshness and Severity.

Therefore let Mankind Youth consider, that in their tender Age they (not knowing what is good and Consistent) ought to submit to the mature Judgment of their Parents, who always, with Bowels of Love and Compassion) are studying their Welfare, tho' they perceive it not. And in this Case, what shall I say more, than Returning all possible Thanks to you, who, next to the Love and Mercies of God, are the Instruments of my Being and Well-being, and ought to acknowledge my

Your Most Grateful and Obedient Son, F. H.

P O S T S C R I P T.

*Next unto God, Dear Parents, I address
My self to you, in humble Thankfulness,
For all your Care and Charges in me before
The Means of Learning unto me allow'd.
Go on, I pray, and let Me still pursue
Those Golden Arts the vulgar never know.*

A Letter of Thanks for a Kindness received.

Most Bountiful Sir

HOW can I without Blush, make you so good a Return: Thanks for the many and weighty Obligations you have laid upon me: yet, though I be struggling in making an Acknowledgement of your Kindness, not only you, but all mankind, might justly tax me with Ingratitude, from the imposition of which, upon a younger Crime, I desire to be most free. I must therefore, and moreover, to suffer this my slender Offering to appear

you, and in some measure insinuate it self into your good opinion, till such time as my Abilities may speak louder, what my Desires with willingness are framing, and so, Sir, with all imaginable Respect begging to be excused for my no better performance, I must, till a more seasonable Opportunity of Requital offers it self, lie under the weight of your Favours, and subscribe my self,

Your most Thankful and Obligated Servant, J. R.

POSTSCRIPT.

To the above Lines I here add some of my best Writing which be pleased to accept of, viz.

*These, Honour'd Parents, are but small Effects
Of your true Love, and manifold Respects.*

These few unpolish'd Lines cannot express

The Thousandth Part of my due Thankfulness

For your last Favours: Yet, if these you grace

With Acceptation, I in Writing's Race

Shall run more swift by that Encouragement,

And in due time some Nobler Piece present.

A Letter returning Thanks to a Mother.

Loving mother;

I Have received the things you expressed in your Letter, and find my self highly bound in general and particular Obligations, to return my hearty Thanks, and express the true sense I always have of your Care and Tenderness towards me, which makes me wish it in my Power to make a larger Acknowledgment; but seeing that wish cannot bring forth the desired effects, I must humbly beg you to accept of my good Will, and dutiful Affections towards you, together with my Prayers for your Prosperity, and whatever else is in my weak power to wish or imagine, hoping in a short time to be with you, that I may give you the same, or any other satisfaction of which I am capable by words of Mouth; and when, I lay my self in concert at your Feet, and remain,

Your dutiful Daughter to obey your Commands, M.G.

▲ Letter

A Letter of Thanks returned for the Advancement of a Person.

S I R,

BY the Influence of your Recommendation I have obtained my Desire, and therefore, in gratitude, must return you my hearty and unfeigned Thanks: Nor is my Soul so mean to conceive these lines can make Satisfaction for such a kindness; but being all at present that my Ability or Business will put in my power to offer, as an Acknowledgement of your Favour, I will herceforward study by what more effectual ways or means I may be able to do you some Service, that may be worthy your Approbation; till when, I shall only desire to subscribe my self,

Your devoted Servant,

G. G.

A Letter of Advice to a Friend.

S I R,

Understanding that you have at present left the Town, I thought it convenient to inform you how things are carried on, especially in relation to Trade (a particular account of which I have inclosed in this Paper) I should indeed have communicated it to you in writing, but that I found it done to my hand. Our Friends are generally in good health, and kindly present (especially such as I have had the opportunity lately to converse withall) their Love and kind Respects to you and your good Lady. As for your Affairs in the City, they go on ——— And for News, we have none of Moment, wherefore not to trouble you with a tedious Epistle, I only request that a good Correspondence may be mainrain'd between us, as heretofore, and that I may still be ranked in the number of your Friends, desiring always to be, whilst my own,

Yours in all Friendship and Respect,

G. D.

Another,

Another.

S I R,

THe cause of my writing (tho' the News perhaps may be unwellcome to your ears) is to let you know that I. S. of N. with whom, I understand, you had considerable dealing, is dead, and has left (as I further hear) his Estate and Effects much encumbered and imbezzi'd, to the no small admiration of his Neighbours, who all along imagined it far'd with him far otherwile; tho' indeed it is a common saying, *That few know what a Man is worth till he dyes.* This, tho' unrequired, I thought fit to advertise you of; and so leaving the further Prosecution to your Discretion, whom it mainly concerns, I remain,

Your Friend and Servant,

A Letter of Recommendation.

S I R;

Relying on your ancient Friendship, I have made bold to recommend to you, as a trusty and faithful Servant, the bearer of this Letter; he is a Person well known to me, and therefore you may take him on my Word, that he is honest and fully qualified to undertake any of those Affairs you have to Imploy him in. Dear Friend, I do desire you to entertain him as he deserves, and in so doing you will not only profit your self, but pleasure him who is,

Your unfeigned Friend, Well-wisher,
And most humble Servant.

The Answer &c.

Dear Friend;

I Have received your Letter, and find by the Contents you have been careful in providing a Person suitable to my Occasions, for which Diligence I must own my self much obliged to you. As for the Person, I take him as you recommend him, viz. Honest and fully qualified, and shall more especially, for your sake, use him in such a manner,

as he shall have no cause to think any thing but well and honourable of your Recommendation, and my Entertainment. And so till a further Opportunity of expressing my Gratitude, I rest, in all Friendship,

Yours to Serve, D. C.

A Letter of Congratulation from a Son to his Father, upon his recovery from Sickneſs.

Honoured Sir ;

HAVING yesterday received advice that you are recovered from your tedious and dangerous Distemper, I embrace that wellcome News with Tears of Joy, more than my Pen or Tongue can express; and how could I doubt for the welfare of a Father whose Affliction I had so long bewailed, and for whose ease and relief I had put up so many prayers and prayers to Heaven: for always where the sorrow is great, the joy that expresses it must needs be so. I would indeed, have waited upon you many times, and with all the Official Duty of an obedient Son, done what in me lay; but understanding your Commands were to the contrary, I durst not presume to disobey you, lest by the disturbance it might have occasioned, the Passions of the Might have augmented the Distemper: Wherefore, seeing you are happily recovered, My joy is not thereby lessened, but rather increased; and so continuing my Prayer, for the Preservation of your Health restored, I am ready to obey your Commands in all things, and subscribe my self,

Your most dutiful

And most Obedient Son, J. S.

A Letter to a Friend.

Dear Friend,

I Was not a little glad, upon the Perusal of your Letter of the 9th Instant, that you would be so kind at last, as to put it into my Power to do you any manner of Service, whereby I might more immediately signalize some Marks of true Friendship; nor, indeed, could you have required it at a more

more reasonable Time; wherefore, not to give you any Delay, I have sent by your Bearer what you desired, and shall always be glad to oblige you in this kind, as far as my Ability will extend. And so, with my hearty good Will towards you, and good Wishes for the Prosperity of your Affairs, I remain,

Your unfeigned Friend,

J. S.

A Letter requiring the Payment of Money : which serves as an Acquittance,

Friend and Chapman,

I Find, upon stating the Accounts between you and me, That several considerable Sums of Money are due to me from you; wherefore, having present occasion for Twenty Pounds, I desire you to send it me by the Bearer heretof, (or here ~~name the Carrier~~) and in so doing, you will very much oblige me; For, indeed, I would not have given you this Trouble (at this Time) had not my Business been urgent.

As the Payment thereof, this Letter, and the Bearer's Acquittance shall be your sufficient Security and Discharge for so much Money. In Witness whereof, I have heretofore set my Hand this 6th Day of May, 1727.

John Chapman,

An Answer to the last Letter.

Sir, or Loving Friend,

I Sent by the Bearer [or the Carrier] Twenty Pounds, according to your desire; and have taken his Acquittance for it; But, because you know I sent but for small Parcels of Goods at a time, therefore I desire you always, for the future, when I send you Money, that you mention in the Acquittances the Names of the Goods for which you received the Money, or, at least, I would have you to mention what Money remains unpaid; for, by certain knowledge, (for want of which,) some poor Country Tradesmen have found

found great Loss either by the Masters or their Apprentices receiving the Money sent, never mentioning for what Goods. Pray take it not ill that I thus write, for I am satisfy'd of your honest Dealing; but know not the Servants you may intrust to receive the Money. I send in small Parcels. So with my Love to you, I rest,
Your Friend and Chapman.
 May, 20. 1727, W. Lovettuck

A Daughters Letter of Entreaty to her Mother.

Dear Mother;

AFTER my Duty in the humblest manner presented to you, and my kind Love to my Relations and Friends in general, in these subsequent lines have presumed to put you in mind, that it was your pleasure, the last time I had the happiness to see you, to tell me, You would give speedy orders for my learning to ———— I it is no lack Orders having yet been given, the length of the time induces me to believe, the remembrance of Your Promise, through the multitude of business, may have slip out of your thoughts. However the great desire I have to learn ———— has imbolden'd me to entreat you, that with the first conveniency you would be pleased so to order it, that I may loose no time; seeing I have already made a considerable progress in what else our School affords. Wherefore, *Dear Mother*, let me by all the ties of tender Love, entreat you once more, not to delay me any longer than the first conveniency of sending, and also to give orders for such Necessaries as will be requisite on that occasion; in which you will infinitely endear her whose duty it is to Please you, and is,

Your most Obedient Daughter;

The Answer.

Daughter;

I Have received your Letter, wherein you press me to the Performance of my Promise, of which I am no ways forgetful: but your Cousin M. having been much impoised these

several Weeks past, and being committed to my care, I could not have the Opportunity to be with you, but, dear Child, my thoughts have often accompanied you; nor am I ignorant what is convenient for your accomplishment in ———— Wherefore rest contented for a few Days, and you shall find my Promise made good. As for the Necessaries that are suitable for what is intended, I have already given order, and you need not doubt of my care to provide all things convenient, that you may hereafter have occasion for. And so at present taking my leave, I rest,

Your Affectionate Mother,

A Letter from an Apprentice to his Father.

Most Indulgent Father;

THe is humbly to satisfy you, That I am not a little pleased with the Trade you have put me to, nor less with the good usage I find. Indeed I found it tedious at first to be separated from your self and my Dear Mother, &c. being withal in a strange place; but Time and good Conversation have banished those Thoughts which made a Melancholy Impression upon my Mind, and I am full of Liveliness, studying nothing more than to Please those that have the Command over me, by carefully and faithfully regarding the Business I am put to, without delay or regret, as well considering that it will be my own hereafter. And thus, Sir, in compliance with your Command, when I saw you last, I have sent you this Letter, desiring, with all the Submission and dutiful Obedience, that a Son can express towards so good a Father and Mother,

To remain at your Disposal in all things.

T. B.

A Letter from an Apprentice to his Master.

S I R ;

I Took this occasion to write to you, to let you understand, that I have accomplish'd the business you gave me directions

Copies of Letters.

59

Instructions to undertake, when you went out of Town: And for your other Affairs, they are managed to your Advantage; only as yet not having had an opportunity to meet with Mr. P. I have not got the Money you order'd me to receive of him; nor have I hitherto had any return out of the County of R. yet I doubt not but by the next to give you an account, that I have fulfill'd your Commands in effecting of them both: Till when not having any further Business, at present, to write about, I continue to be

Your faithful Servant, R. G

A Letter from a young Man newly out of his Time.

Respected Sir;

HAVING now finished my ———— years Apprenticeship, am now entering into the World for employ for my self, and knowing my Trade depends upon Acquaintance, make bold to renew former Friendship with you, hoping, if it lies in your Power to do me any kindness therein, you will (for the love and good will you bear to me) do your utmost. And what you do therein, shall be acceptable to and oblige,

Your Servant to command.

A Letter from a young Man to his Mother to acquaint her with his Marriage.

Dear Mother;

MY time being expired, and having been some time settled at my Trade, could think of no better expedient, than to get me a Helper and Partner in my Affairs, that so I might not only have Comfort, but the better Improvement. Now what Partner this may be, you may, perhaps, wonder; but give me leave, after having asked Pardon for proceeding to Marriage without your knowledge or consent, to tell you, it is a Female Partner, one that is both Vertuous and Beautiful, suitable to my Humour in all things, and through whose Industry, and my own, I doubt not but to thrive in the World; and that we may the

better

better do so, I entreat you to send us your Blessing as least
if you put nothing in over and above towards their keep-
ing. And so with mine and my Wifes humble Duty present-
ed to you, I take leave to subscribe my self,

First Nat'l Trust Co., C. R.

Another from a Young Woman.

Dear Father;

These are first to beg your Pardon and Blessing, and afterwards to let you know, that I have chang'd my Condition, as I hope, to the bettering of my Fortune. Having joynd my self in Wedlock to an honest & industrious young Man, who, by his Love to me, and care of his Affairs gives me hopes to Assure my self, that when you have a true account what manner of Person I have chose for my Husband, you will not be displeased, altho' I did it without your Consent, which indeed the Duty of a Daughter required my self to have had; but the length of the way, and many other things that frequently happen to cross poor Lovers, made me presume upon your good Nature, and promise my self, that you will forgive this one Disobedience, nor doubting, but my future Endeavours shall make amends for this one Defect. And so with mine and my Husbands Duty and entire Affections to you and all our Relations, I continue to be, Sir,

My most Dearest Daughter G. H.

Letter of Congratulation from a Nephew to his Sister, upon
her Marriage.

Robin, Sister;

EVer since I heard the News, that you had changed your Condition, I have even long'd for an opportunity to tell you how pleasing it was to me to hear that you have changed for the better, who, as a kind Brother, do participate with you in your Happiness, being fully perswaded of the Rightness thereof; for had you put it into my Power to make your Choice, I could not have laid your Lot in a fairer Lot; wherefore I cannot forbear to Congratulate your good Success,

Success, as being constrained to express a more than ordinary Joy upon the Prospect of her present and future Felicity, whom I ardently love. And so with my Respects to your self, and to your loving Husband, whom henceforth I must stile, my dearest Brother, and remain, in all Affection and Tenderness of your Wellfare,

Your Joyful Brother, J. R.

The Answer.

Dear Brother;

I Am not a little glad, that the Choice I have made is so acceptable to you; for although I acquainted you not with my Intentions, yet let me tell you, I did not proceed rashly or unadvisedly, but with all Caution and Deliberation, a knowing Marriage to be a weighty Affair, on which depends our Welfare or Happiness in this World; for as there is nothing more comfortable on Earth than Marriage, where mutual Affections are united and joyued in one reciprocal Love; so there is nothing more uncomfortable, where Discord and Discontent put in to destroy the expected Happiness; which Enemies to true Love, I hope, shall never prevail. Indeed, there is little Prospect of any Disagreement between us; though few can tell what time may bring forth; but in the mean while, being possesed of all that I can wish or reasonably desire on Earth, I find no room for my Joys with the Melancholy Thoughts, or rather Fancies of future Events, but think my self above the reach of Envy, or fortune; And so returning you hearty Thanks for your kind and good liking, as also for the sense of Joy you express for my well doing, I remain,

Your ever Loving Sister, M. P.

A Letter to request a kindness.

Dear Friend;

Living upon the long Famine which has passed between us, and your large Profection of civility in Friendship, urged by necessity, and the many occasions require, I have made bold to let you know, that I stand in need

need of _____ with which if you can possibly furnish me, without any prejudice or hindrance to your own Affairs, I shall take it as an extraordinary Kindness; and if it stand with your convenience, pray send it by the bearer or by some other speedy hand; and in so doing, You will very much oblige him who is,

Your very humble Servant, T. S.

The Answer.

Dear Tour,

I Was not a little glad, upon the perusal of your Letter, that you would be so kind as last as so put it into my Power to do you any manner of Service, whereby I might more immediately signify some Marks of Friendship, nor indeed could you have required it at a more seasonable time. Wherefore, not to give you any delay, I have sent by your Bearer what you demanded, and shall always be proud to oblige you in this kind, as far as my Abilities will extend; And so with my hearty good Will towards you, and my good Wishes for the Prosperity of your Affairs, I remain,

Your unfeigned Friend, N. D.

A Letter from a Husband to his Wife.

My Loving Wife;

Since you have been absent, together with my Children; (besides my Prayers for the continuation of your Health) I take all Possible Care to provide such Necessary as I imagine any ways useful or convenient for you, and have sent them by the Bearer, and by whom it is my desire, and kind request, that you would send me an Account of your entertainment, and in what estate and condition of Health and Liking you are; for tho' you are absent from me, yet it is the great Concern of my Thoughts, to study the method and means to promote your Welfare, which I ever tender equally if not superior to my own; and so with all the love and tender regard of a Husband and Father, with my love to you,

our

our Children, and all our Friends and Relations, I remain,
Dear Wife, Your loving Husband, D. P.

The Wife's Answer to the foregoing Letter.

Kind and ever Loving Husband;

I Received your Letter, which next to your Company, I highly esteem; and according to your desire have made you this Return, whereby I assure you, that we are not only in good Health, but have found Entertainment beyond our Expectations, all our Friends being every where, and at all times, so Obliging and Respectful, that they 'il as it were, detain us from you with the Charms of their Kindness, which will, no doubt, prevail with us, to stay somewhat longer than we intended, or you could possibly expect. As for the things you sent, I have received them and return you all the good Thanks that are suitable and consistent with the Virtue of an Obedient Wife, for your Care; assuring you, that not only our Children, in a grateful acknowledgement, as they stand in Relation to us, present their humble Duty to you, but also, our Friends and Relations in general, crave to be had in Remembrance by you: And so with my Prayers for your Health and Wellfare, I continue to be.

Dear Husband;

Your Loving and Constant Wife, A. P.

A Letter from one Sister to another to enquire of Health, &c.

Dear Sister;

YOUR not writing to me in so long a time puts me somewhat in doubt, that either you are not in Health, or that some unhappy Accident has fallen out. Wherefore to remove my fears, pray, with the first Convenience, be so kind as to send me a Letter, by which I may be made sensible how it fares. And moreover forget not to let me know how our Friends and Relations are, as to their Health and Wellfare; and in so doing you will very much satisfy and oblige her who is,

Your loving Sister, E. B.

The

'The Answer &c.'

Kind Sister ;

I Cannot but return you my hearty and unfeigned Thanks for your Care and Regard towards me, and must at the same time beg your Excuse, that I have been so Negligent as not to write to you. I must confess, I had no want of Opportunity; But hoping you will Pardon what is past, I will be more diligent for the future, as to what you desire to know. And these are to certify you, that at present my self together with all our Friends and Relations, are in perfect Health, and desire most kindly to be remembered to you, not being a little glad, after so long Absence, that they have the Opportunity to Congratulate, tho' at a distance, your Health and Welfare. This being all at present, I rest,

Yours in all kind of Love, S. B.

A Letter requiring the Payment of Money,

S I R,

I Find upon stating Accounts between me and you, that several considerable Sums of Money are due to me from you: Wherefore having occasion for Twenty Pounds, I desire you to send it me without fail by the bearer hereof, and, in so doing you will very much oblige me; for indeed I would not have given you this trouble, had not my business been urgent. As for the Payment thereof, this Letter and the bearers Receipt shall be your sufficient Discharge for so much. Not else, but that I am,

Your Friend and Servant, J. W.

A Letter for Goods,

R,

Having by a Friend of yours, that you are stored with sundry sorts of goods which I want in my way of Trade, make bold to essay a Trade with you, so as in a small Parcel to become your Chap-man; my stock is not great, neither will many vend in this place; therefore I pray you to send me ----- or to the value of about 5 l. worth,

and as they prove shall deal further with you: The lowest Price send, as also the time of Payment, and I shall endeavour to be punctual. I am,

Your humble Servant, G. D.

A Letter of Trade and Commerce.

SIR;

I Send you, with this Letter, the several Goods You write for, which amount to - - - - as per bill of Parcels inclosed, whereby you may understand the several Prices. As to the time of Payment, I shall not be very pressing, but if it suit with Your conveniency to pay one Half in - - - Months and the remainder at - - will oblige me. And if you will let me know what Goods you shall want, from time to time, I will endeavour to supply you. I take leave at present, and remain

Your Friend and Servant, H. M.

Another.

Sir;

Yours of the 23^d Instant I received, by which I perceive you have put on board the Sloop *Mary*, for this place, four Hogsheads of Rum, &c. When they come to hand I will do for you as for my self in the Disposal thereof. I have, according to your former Order, shipped on board the Brigantine *John and Mary*, whereof T. M. is Master, three Tun of Flower and one Tun of Oyl, amounting, as per Invoice inclosed, to 120^l. 15^s. 9^d. The Bill of Lading for the same you have also here inclosed. I am

Your Humble Servant, R. B.

A Letter of Credit.

Sir;

Since mine of the 18th of the last Month, I have yours of the 4th Instant, and refer you to what I have already written in answer to your said Letter. This serves at present to desire you to supply my very good Friend Mr. N. H. with

P

What

what Money he shall have occasion for. not exceeding the Sum of - - - taking his Bill or Bills of Exchange for the same, and put it to my Account; and this my Letter of Credit shall be your sufficient Warrant for so doing.

Your Humble Servant, N. V.

A Letter written to Reclaim Youthful Extravagancies, &c.

SON William;

THe Unhappy Report of your of your wild Extravagancies having reached my Ears, I could no longer refrain to let you understand, that I Resent them very beniously, and am altogether displeased that You should give up the Prime of Your Years to such Follies as you stand charged withal, especially when I expected other Fruits of my Labour and Care, to render you such an one as might be a Credit rather than a Reproach to Me; You little deserving the Cost I have bestowed upon you in Learning, and other Things, to fit and qualify you for Employments, that might not only prove Profitable, but Honourable also. Nor is it the smallest part of my Grief to hear that you are addicted to Drinking and uttering Prophane Words and Expressions altogether unbecoming a Christian. Wherefore, I Conjure You, by all the Bonds and Tyes of Nature and Affection, by which You stand bound and obliged to Me, That you speedily Reform Your Ways and Actions, or else You may expect to be Disowned or Rejected by

Your, Incensed Father, F. G.

A Letter from a Gentleman, Excusing a Son, to his Father.

Worthy Sir;

I Had not Interested my self in the Affair between a Father and a Son (betwixt whom I am sorry there should be any Difference) but that I can, of my own certain Knowledge, declare him Innocent of that which you are pleased to Charge him with; and therefore am Confident You must have received Your Information from some who have Maliciously Traded Your Son, on purpose to beget in You a Causeless Aversion

Aversion towards him. I have all along had an Eye upon him, and have with Pleasure beheld how Inoffensively he has been in all his Actions: His sober Conversation and civil Carriage is particularly taken Notice of by all the Neighbours: And therefore I wonder with what Face any one could suggest to you that he is grown Debauch'd and a common Swearer; whereas I am every Day in his Company, and never, that I know of, heard him swear an Oath in my Life, nor never saw him ~~in~~ Drink: And therefore his Accuser must be very Frontless, in laying things to his Charge that carry not the least shadow of Truth along with 'em. And therefore let me entreat you not to pass Sentence against him, before you know him to be a Criminal: For if to be accused, be enough to make a Man guilty; it will be hard to find one innocent. And I am sure he has always retained that Duty and Respect for you, which becomes a dutiful Son to have for so kind a Father, as I know you have been, and I hope will still continue to him. This I was the more willing to let you know, that I might renew our former Acquaintance, and let you know how much I am, Sir,

Yours in all true Friendship and Service, O. P.

A Letter to Congratulate a Person upon his Return out of Foreign Parts, or from a long Journey.

SIR;

I Am everjoy'd at the News of your happy Return, and the more, because the Assurance I have of your Safety, has banished those Fears that oppress'd me when you were absent, lest some Mischance or sad Mishap had befallen you; yet, at the same time I must accuse myself for sending you a Paper, when indeed I ought to have waited upon your Person, though in my defence I may say that much, that ~~had~~ not extraordinary Business detain'd me, I had not failed to have been with you: However that Business once dispatch'd, I will no longer delay my coming, to let you, by word of Mouth, more plainly know how much I am, Sir,

Your very Humble Servant, T. B.

*A Letter from a Country Chapman to the Person he deals with
in the City.*

S I R;

THIS I have not lately had any Occasion for Goods, yet thinking it necessary to keep up our former Correspondence, I have given You the Trouble of a few Lines, desiring to hear from you how Trade moves at *Philadelphia*; and what the Price is now of those Commodities in which you know I principally deal: And to prevent your too much Trouble I should be glad if you would send me down a very useful Paper, which I remember I have seen at *Philadelphia*, containing the Price Current of all Goods and Merchandizes, and I will gladly satisfy you for it, and esteem it a Kindness done to, Sir, Your Friend and Chap-man, M. N.

A Letter from a Person at Sea, to his Friend on Shore.

Sir;

I Have now for some Months been fluctuating upon the uncertain Water, where variety of Weathers have produced various Events; that is to say, we have had both Calms and Storms, and I can hardly tell which is worst; For tho' a Calm indeed looks Pleasanter, there is no Seaman that would chuse to be becalmed: And yet there is in Tempests so much Horror, as would affright one only to relate it: We met with one upon the Coast of *Portugal*, but such as I never wish to see again: Sometimes the Top-mast tilting at the Stars, whilst the Winds blew as if they'd waken Death; and the Labouring Ship climb'd up vast Hills of Seas, *Olympus* high, and then ducked down again as low as Hell's from Heaven; for the Tumultuating foamy Main seem'd to cast Water on the burning Bear, and quench the Guard of the ever fixed Pole: the Rudder fail'd, the Ship at random drove, no Object could we see but Sea and Heaven; nay, Heaven it self loudly began to roar, as if it would split the very Globe in sunder, whilst Lightning issuing from the parting Clouds added fresh Horror to our trembling Hearts; each one became an Orator for Life; our Hands still-borne, whilst our Hearts dispar'd:

dispaired: At last the mighty Ruler of the Ocean came and
the Proud Waves, and they were still. But yet through
Mercy, amidst so many Dangers, I have not only been pre-
served, but have uninterruptedly enjoyed my Health; and
therefore hope I shall at last return in safety to the shore again:
For to speak Truth, I have no mind to be devoured by Fishes,
or wrapt up in a Winding-sheet of Waves; and if it were for
nothing else, but that I might once more enjoy my Friends,
especially your self, to whom I am so very much obliged.
But how long time it will be before I shall enjoy the Happiness,
I know not; only be confident of this, I shall no sooner
set my Feet upon my native Soil again, but shall make what
haste I can to tell you how much I am, Dear Sir,

Your very obliged Friend and Servant, J. W.

A Letter from one Lady to another.

Madam;

It to be forcibly deprived of what we most Delight in, is to
be justly reckon'd amongst the Misfortunes of Life; then
such I may esteem your absence from me; whose Con-
versation was so extremely agreeable, that I find the loss of me
be a very sensible Affliction. For the Honour you did me
of taking me into a more than ordinary Intimacy, the Effect
of which was the unboresing of our Thoughts to each other,
did as it were twist our very Souls together, so that they
could not be parted without some Violence. The only way
left, Madam, to make up this Separation, is to hasten your
Return, which like the Sun's breaking forth, after having
been a considerable time envelop'd in Clouds and Darknēss
can only revive the drooping Spirits of, Madam,

Your Friend and Servant, M. F.

*A Letter from a Gentleman to a Gentlewoman to beg Pardon
for an Offence.*

Madam,

It is in vain to contend with my Judge: And therefore,
tho' I know my Fault has been aggravated beyond what
it

it would justly bear? yet I will rather submit myself to your Sentence, than to go about to Exaggerate my Crime: I am sensible that I have offended you, tho' I never design'd it. And when you have done your self Justice by inflicting upon me what you think I merit for my Offence, then will I plead my Innocency, and let you know I always was loath from saying any thing that might reflect upon your Fame, that in my Opinion ~~my~~ Innocence it self is more sufficient, nor can unsull'd Snow appear more White: For true, I am guilty, to give you ground to think I have offended: but my Offence is my Misfortune, farther than my Fault. But, Madam, what if I appeal from your severe Justice to your Mercy; I know you are not inexorable, nor did you suck the Breasts of Wolves and Tygers: And since there is so much Sweetness in your Eyes, there needs must be Love in your Heart; at least, so far as to forgive a poor repenting Criminal. And since you're such a bright Idea of the Author of All Goodness, you cannot, but like him, delight in showing Mercy: And because nothing more engages, ~~than~~ ~~showing~~ Mercy to a Criminal: I shall henceforth endeavour to be like *Cæsar's* Wife, not only free from Guilt, but from Suspicion. And further, shall, to expiate my Offence, always remain,

*Your truly sorrowful,
and much afflicted Servant,
T. B.*

The Answer.

S I R,

I Receiv'd your Letter, and must let you know, That whatsoever reflects upon my Fame (which is far dearer to me, than my Life) tho' at the most remotest Distance, is what I can't but think a Fault; and therefore know not how you can be Innocent; and indeed, to plead your Innocence, is to accuse me of Injustice, in charging you with a Crime: For from what you write, I am oblig'd to believe, that in what you said you design'd no Injury to me; and that it was a Crime of Inadvertency rather than of Malice. And for that Reason, upon your Profession of Repentance,

I heartily Pardon you: But Charity it self does
 not give us leave to beg the Man I speak of in my Letter: You
 will not therefore be admitted to the former Par-
 don, (since you have made it all a use of 'em)
 if you have given some more substantial Pieces of the Sin-
 cerity of your Repentance. And that I Pardon this your
 Offence, yet if you should Relapse into your former
 Error you must expect a much severer Treatment: For
 I shall no more esteem my self, as now I do,
 Your Remitted Friend, so serve you, M. S.

Letter to a Lady, desiring admittance into her Presence.

My Lady:

Where nothing of Ill is intended, I hope nothing will
 be taken Ill: And this hope has embolden'd me
 to wholly a Stranger to you (to make this Line (the
 being yet an Opportunity to do it with my Tongue (the
 Interpreter of my Heart, and to let you know the Interest
 you have therein: In short, Madam, the Case is
 this, I thought I'd be at Sir T. N's when my good For-
 tune brought you thither; I saw you, I lik'd you, I lov'd
 you: And being inform'd you are a single Person (as I
 my self also am) I resolv'd to make my Addresses to you
 in order to which, all that I at present desire, is only to be
 admitted into your Presence, to kiss your fair Hand, and
 give you some account of my self: I come not, Madam, to
 trouble upon you, nor do expect you should take my bare
 Word in what I say: No, Madam, I have a greater value
 of your Judgement than to have such a Thought: But when
 I shall make good my Words by correspondent Actions; and
 when you in my Circumstances, by them whom you dare
 trust, as well as my own Word, I then shall beg the Favour
 of being admitted to the Honour of, Madam,

Your most Affectionate and Humble Servant, R. L.

Now Madam, you will return a Line or two by the Bearer,
 desiring your Licence for my Admittance into your
 Presence.

The Lady's Answer.

S I R,

I Received yours by the bearer of this: and tho' I am altogether a Stranger to your Person, and so should perhaps make my self liable to Censure, by returning you an Answer, yet you write so like a Gentleman of Probity and Honour, that I know not well how to deny you: and therefore have chosen rather to expose my self to the Censure of others, than to shew my self rude to a Stranger: 'Tis true Sir, I am a single Person, (and therefore ought to be much the more cautious of the Correspondencies I hold) yet have not resolv'd to alter my Condition: I do confess I have made no Vow of Celibacy, and therefore if I meet with such a Gentleman as I think I can be happy in, and I can fancy, I am not so much devoted to a single, but I can change it for a Married State: But it is not Words alone that will persuade me; for Words as you your self do well observe, must be made good by correspondent Actions, or else they will prove for nothing. And therefore, in a word, if your Person be real and your designs honest and honourable, you have hereby the Liberty of making me a Visit; and then according as I find you, so I'll Treat you. And in the mean Time subscribe my self,

Your in all Civil Regards, M. L.

A Letter to a Widow, on the Death of her Husband.

M. L.

The old Proverb has any Truth in it, viz. That it is a very bad Husband that is not missed in a Family, your Loss must be greatly enhanced, as having lost a Husband so Exemplary in all respects, but especially in his Love to You: and in this barren Age of Vertue, it will be hard to find another like him; Yet should not this make You Inconso- lable on the contrary, you should Thank God that ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~so~~ ^{so} long carried you with enjoying of so Rich a Jewel. And now since he who gave him, has thought good to take him hence, you should you not, with holy Job of Old, quickly

The Lord has given, and the Lord has taken away; and blessed be the Name of the Lord. And since God himself has promised *To be a Husband to the Widow*, you cannot but own, you have changed for the better, and so, without doubt, has your Husband also; for though he has left a Prudent Wife behind him, yet we need not fear to affirm with *St. Paul*, *That he who Christ is far better.* He carried with you the Time stipulated first between you, which was, *Till Death parted You.* And what could you desire more? You knew at first that Death at last must part you, and that it lay in neither of your Powers to chuse which must go first. Dry up Your Tears then, and prepare to follow him; for You may go to him, but he can never return to you again; for Death has safely landed him upon the shoarless Shoar of vast Eternity. Look forward then, *dear Madam*, and seeing Death has set you free from the Law of you Husband, you've the whole World before you to make a second Choice in: And if upon mature Consideration, you should think fit to cast your Thoughts on me, there's none should meet your Passion with a brighter Flame, or a more true and cordial Affections, than, Madam,

Your humble Admirer

and Friend to serve you I.

*'Twould swell this Volumn too too large,
And make this Book of too much Charge,
To put down Copies in all things,
That Trade and Friendship daily brings,*

*Therefore a little take and see,
And strive for Ingenuity.
'Tis matter that will thee and I,
Both Mind and Heart and Head imploy,
And when engag'd with all our Might,
Our Business will teach to endite,
The Form being design'd only,
To give you a sample to write by.*

Instructions for External and Internal Super and Subscriptions of Letters.

READER, having given you a Prospect of the intent and purport of sundry kinds, of Letters, as to matter and form, together with Examples of Letters of several kinds, especially such as are necessary for the Intended Purpose and Design; I shall only add the Titles Suitable for such, on *Superscription* of Letters, and so conclude this head, viz.

1. Therefore when you writ to any Person, if you would have it well accepted, you must consider his or her Title, Degree or Alliance, and so frame your Complement, *Superscription*, and *Subscription* accordingly: And that you may know how to distinguish in this case, as to Titles of Honour or Respect, take notice, in your Addresses, this Form is mostly in use, viz.

To the King; *Sir*, or *May it please Your Majesty*; and sometimes, *Sacred Sir*, *Dread Sir*, *Liege Lord*, &c.

To the Queen, *Madam*, or *May it please Your Majesty*, or *Most Sacred Majesty*.

To the Prince, *Sir*, or *May it please Your Royal Highness*.

To the Princess, *Madam*, or *May it please Your Royal Highness*.

To a Duke, *My Lord*, or *May it please Your Grace*.

To a Dutchess, *Madam*, or *May it please Your Grace*.

To a Marquess, *My Lord*, or *May it please Your Lordship*.

To a Marchioness, *Madam*, or *May it please Your Ladyship*.

To an Earl; *My Lord*, or *Right Honourable*.

To a Countess, *Madam*, or *Right Honourable*.

To a Viscount, the same as an Earl; and to his Lady, the same as a Countess.

To a Baron, *My Lord*, or *May it please Your Lordship*.

To a Baroness, *Madam*, or *May it please Your Ladyship*.

To a Baronet, *Sir*, or *May it please Your Lordship*, and to his Lady, *Madam*, or *May it please Your Ladyship*.

To

To a Knight, Sir, or Right Worshipful.

And to his Lady, Madam, or May it please Your Ladyship.

To an Esquire, Sir, or May it please Your Worship.

And indeed, *Sir*, or *much Honoured*, is used to Gentlemen in general; as *Madam*, or *May it please you dear Mistress*, is used to the contrary Sex of any Degree, inferior to what I have named.

There are other Titles which are proper external Superscriptions, or such whereby the Letter is directed, if it be not sent by a special Messenger, and, many times, not amiss to be inserted, altho' the Messenger be special, and then to be Written upon a Paper that covers the Letter, the inclosure not being Sealed, to prevent tearing, as often in other Cases it happens: And these are as follow, seldom varying, unless some addition be made in respect of several Titles centring in one and the same Person, which is frequently left to the discretion of the Superscriber. *viz.*

To the King, or To His most Excellent Majesty, or To the most Sacred Majesty of George the First.

To the Queen, or To the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.

To the Prince, or To his Royal Highness.

To the Princess, or To her Royal Highness.

And in case of the Lords Spiritual, *viz.*

To his Grace, the Lord A. B. of Cant.

To his Grace, the Lord A. B. of York.

And frequently the stile is, *To the most Reverend Father in God, &c.* And to the other like our Clergy, *Reverend Doctor*, or otherwise, according to their Degree and Quality. But if you Write to a Temporal Lord, you must vary the stile after this manner, as,

To his Grace, the Duke of B.

To the Right Honourable, the Marquiss of H.

To the Right Honourable, the Earl of S.

To the Right Honourable, the Lord Viscount M.

To the Right Honourable, the Lord B.

Not ought the Stile of the Nobility to be dignified, (tho' not the Immediate Heirs,) with less than the Title of *Honourable*, as being their due by Birth-right; and to a Knight

and Baronet, by Virtue of his Patent the Title of *Honourable* and *right Worshipful* is given. As likewise the latter to a Knight, and *Worshipful* to an Esquire.

Every Privy-Counsellor, tho' not a Nobleman, is stiled *Right Honourable*; all Embassadors have the stile of *Excellency*; as likewise has the Lord Lieut. of *Ireland*, and the Capt. General of his Majesties Forces when in being: Nor has the Lord Mayor of *London*, during his Mayoralty, a less Title than *Right Honourable*, and the Sheriffs, during that Office, are stiled *Right Worshipful*; nor does any thing less than the Title of *Esquire* extend to the Mayors of any Corporation, Justices of the Peace, &c. As for Titles, or rather Complementary Civilities, due to persons of lesser Rank, I leave them to the Discretion of the Writer, to suit them according to their Dignities, or the occasion of his writing; and so I proceed to other Matters necessary to be known,

Subscriptions, and other necessary matters for the Reader to learn and understand.

AS for Subscriptions (which are those that are Written under the Letter) they are no other than the Complements of the Writers, to which their Names are affixed, yet ought to express in some measure the Quality of the Person, by an owning *Superiority* in him to whom the Letter is directed, or a *Power* and *Au'thority* in him who writes it, over him to whom it is written; on the other Hand, *Friendship*, *Equality* or *Familiarity*.

When we write to Persons of Quality, we leave a large distance between the Body of the Letter and the Subscription, as likewise in case of the Internal Subscription, which signifies the greater Respect. And if Letters of Business, or from any strange Place are required, you must on the left Hand set down the Date of the Year, and the Name of the Place, which indeed may not be amiss in any kind of Letter, unless you would not discover the Place from whence you send. Wherefore, having thus hinted it, I leave the rest to the Discretion of the Writer, ever minding him to write in the plainest style as may be most suitable to the Capacity of those he writes about, not affecting any Singularity or Formality in

making too often a Repetition of unnecessary or affected Words; endeavouring in the most seemly manner to suit what we write, (as I before have hinted) to the Capacity, Quality, Sex and Age of the Person to whom it is intended. Nor must Brevity and Plainness be rejected, no, nor fairness in Writing, especially by those who are not much incumbered with Business, and have time to deliberate on it; for by so doing, together with true Spelling; Credit and a good Opinion of you is frequently gained; nor must the making up or sealing your Letter be uncomely, but neat and handsome, with a fair Impression of your Seal.

Part

Part IV.

Containing useful Instructions for making all
such legal Writings as are generally used.

HAVING thus given Directions and Instructions in Reading and Writing true *English*, in Arithmetick, and in Writing and Judging Letters, I shall now in this *Fourth Part* give you plain Directions and Examples for making the most usual legal Forms of Writings that are made between Man and Man, &c. with many other things of the like nature, whereby a Man that is but an ordinary Scholar may be enabled to do his Business, without being at the charge of a Scrivener or Attorney, who are not at all times to be met with in the *American Woods* or Plantations. I shall in the first Place give you some Forms of *Bills of Parcels*, *Trades mens Accounts*, with *Acquittances* or *Discharges*; and then proceed to *Bills*, *Bonds*, &c. Not omitting some necessary Directions concerning *Bills of Exchange*, &c.

*Both Shop-keepers and Merchants do when they,
Their Goods transport, put off, or truck away,
Plain Bills of Parcels make, that all may see,
What Goods they are, and what their Prices be.*

*Sold to W. Paywel the 25th of March, 1727.
the following Goods.*

46 Yards of Downlace, at 2 s. 5 d.	55 09 03
987 Ells of Ozenbrigg, at 17 d.	69 18 03
816 Ells of Holland, at 4 s. 6 d.	197 02 02
519 Ells Linnen-Cloth, at 2 s. 8 d.	78 10 08
259 Ells narrow ditto, at 14 d.	15 02 02
One Barrel of Gun-Powder,	08 08 08

Errors excepted per John Fair dealer.

L. 4:4 11 2
Tee

*The Merchants when be doth the Money take.
He ought the Paying Man a Discharge to make,
A Form thereof in short, yet full, is here,
Transcribed out, the Buying Man to clear.*

R Eceived this 25 of March, 1727. of W. Paywell the
full of the within Bill. I say rec'd by me.

John Fair-dealer.

*Some Men of Handy-crafts may this Book see,
Therefore for them some Bills prepared be.*

A Carpenters Bill.

*Mr. Richard Goodpay of New-York, Dr.
for Work and Materials.*

F or 50 Boards, at 12 d. per ps.	20	10	0
For 30 Ps. of Square Timber,	02	05	0
For 6 Oaken planks,	00	12	6
For 2000 of Shingles,	03	00	0
For 30 Pounds of Nails,	02	10	0
For 29 days Work.	02	01	0

John Chargeall.

L. 11 18 6

*When this Bill's paid, the Carpenter must make,
A full Discharge for what he then doth take,
It being his good hap all to receive,
He doth, with thanks a full Discharge then give,
A Copy here you'll find prepar'd by me,
To teach you how a Discharge ought to be.*

R Eceived the 16 of March, 1727. of Mrs Richard
Goodpay, the Sum of Eleven Pounds eighteen Shillings
and Six Pence, in full of the within Bill, and is in full of
all other Bills, Accompts and Demands to this day. I say
rec'd in full by me.

John Chargeall.

*Accounts and Receipts.**A Brick-layers Bill.*

Mr. Thomas Houschave of New-York, Dr.
for Work and Materials.

F Or 2000 of Bricks,	25	00	0
F Or 60 Load of Lime,	30	00	0
For 52 Load of Sand,	02	10	0
For 30 Days Work,	07	16	0
For a Labourer 52 Days,	04	16	0

Daniel Ebbets. L. 69 16 0

*The Bricklayer doth also his whole Bill take,
 Therefore a full Discharge he must then make;
 No Copy here is needed but the same,
 Will serve for him, changing the Sum and Name.*

A Smith's Bill.

Mr. Zach. Zinthos of Quietland his Bill.

F Or 2 great Iron Bars for the House,	01	18	8
F Or one fire-shovel and Tongs,	00	11	6
For 30 pair of Hooks and Hinges,	03	00	0
For mending an Anchor,	00	10	0
For a pair of And-Irons,	01	02	0
For 6 Casements,	03	00	0

Edward Black, L. 10 02 0

*The Smith's bad Fortune is but half to take,
 And therefore a Discharge in part doth make,
 The which because it differs from the other,
 We do a Copy of it here discover,*

Received

R Ecived the 19th of March, 1727. of Mr. Zach. Zindler of Quindon the Sum of Three Pounds two shillings and Two Pence, in part of the within Bill. I say, received by me.

Edward Black,

*When he the rest receives, he then shall receive,
A full Discharge; A Copy you may take,*

R Ecived this 3d day of May, 1727. of Mr. Zindler the Sum of Seven Pounds, being in full for Work done for him March, last, as per Bill given in. I say, received in full of this Bill, by me,

Edward Black

*You here may see three Trades-men's Bills at large,
All paid, and therefore to each a discharge,
Which may teach you how a Receipt to make,
Altho' you should not all the whole Sum take.*

*One thing more yet follows, that needful is,
Which all should careful be, they it not miss,
And that is, true Discharges for their Rent,
When a full Quarter is run out and spent.
Wherefore when you your Rents do pay,
See that you keep this Rat- away,
To take discharges from landlords sure,
And in fact lost as very endure.*

An Acquittance for Rent.

R Ec'd this 5th of May, 1727, of James Renter of
Barrington, Cordwainer, the Sum of Five Pounds,
which is in full for a Quarters Rent for the dwelling House
he now lives in, and which became due the 25 of March,
last past. I say, received by me,

John Trickett,

A Servants Receipt for Rent.

Recieved this 3d day of April, 1727. of Mr. Thomas Pymsey of Newtown, the Sum of Six Pounds, being in part for one Quarter Rent due the 25 of March, last past, for the House he now lives in. I say, received for the use of my Master David Dill, by me.

John Frantier,

It is Customed to most Men

Accounts oft for to clear,
And with exactness by their Pen
the Sum to make appear;
And when the Ballance 'twixt them both
is fully satisfied,
They do a full Discharge then make,
that they long Friends may 'vide,
Thus Copies therefore here are made,
for both of them to make,
And to prevent all future Claims,
each from the other take.

Recieved this 9th of October, 1727. of Mr. Leonard Fairdealer, the Sum of Ninety Pounds, being for so much due upon Accompt, and is in full of all Reckonings, Bills, Debts, Accomptes and Demands whatsoever to the Day-abbreviated. I say rec'd by me,

Ja. Peaceable.

Rec'd the 20th of October, 1727. of Mr. Ja. Peaceable at Hyra:ll Shop-keeper, the Sum of Two Hundred Pounds, being for Goods sold him at sundry times, and is in full of all Accomptes, Reckonings, Bills, Bonds, Debts, Taxes and Demands whatsoever from the beginning of the World unto the Day of the Date hereof. I say, received the said Sum in full,

per me Leg. Fairdealer.

For to confirm a full Discharge, we do,
Advise, a Seal may be put thereto.

And if a Witness may be gain'd, 'twould be,
Much more Authentick to Posterity.

With Men of Trade, sometimes Need doth require
The Selling Man of Chap-men to desire
A Bill or Bond, wherein they fix a Day,
The Money that is owing for to pay:
A Form of both may very helpful be,
Which here follows to be improv'd by thee.

A short Bill of Debt.

K Now all Men by these Presents, That I *Thomas Debtor*
of the Parish of *Moneyless* in the County of *Camber-*
land, Weaver, do own and am justly indebted unto *M^r.
Litig. Troublefom*, of the same place, Merchant, in the just
and full Sum of Ninety Pounds, Current Money of the
Province of *Lawless*, which I promise and oblige my self
to pay to the said *Litig. Troublefom*, or to his order, on or
before the 10th Day of *October*, next, Witness my hand and
seal this 7th of *May*, Anno Domini 1727.

Seen and Delivered in the

Presence of *John Evidence*
Will. Tellurac

Thomas Debtor

A short Bill with a Penalty.

K Now all Men by these Presents, That I *Ray. Shaw*
of *Woodbridge* in the County of *Essex* in the Province
of *New-Jersey*, do owe and stand justly indebted unto *Will.
Woodbe* of the same place, Merchant, in the Sum of Twenty
Pounds current lawful Money of *New-Jersey*, To be paid
to the said *Will. Woodbe*, or to his Heirs, Executors, Ad-
ministrators or Assigns, at or before the first day of *April*
next ensuing the Date hereof. In and to the payment of the
same well and truly to be made, I bind me, my Heirs,
Executors, and Administrators, in the full Sum of Forty
Pounds current Money, firmly by these Presents,
In Witness whereof I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal
this 1st day of *April*, 1727.

Seen and Delivered

in the Presence of
E. & T. R.

Ray. Shaw

The Bill that's last, is good, and will avail,
When unto it there is both Hand and Seal,
And 'tis much better, if to what is done,
You have some ~~is~~ to Witness, at least one,

Now next that doth present it self to thee,
Is an Example, how a Bond should be,
Made so Authentick, as that binding may,
Inforce the Debtor into just Sutt to pay.

K Now all Men by these Presents, That I *Edward Endeavour* of *Quietown* in the County of *Troublesome*, Carpenter, am holden and firmly bound unto *Richard Usurer* of the same Place, Merchant, in the Sum of One Hundred Pounds Current lawful Money of *Pennsylvania*; to be paid to the said *Richard Usurer*, or to his certain Attorney, Executors, Administrators or Assigns To the which Payment well and truly to be made, I do hereby bind my self, my Heirs, Executors and Administrators, and every of them firmly by these Presents. Sealed with my Seal, dated this 4th Day of May, in the 4th Year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord *George*, by the Grace of God of Great Brit^{ain}, &c. King, defender of the Faith; *Annoq: Dom. 1727.*

The Condition of this Obligation is such, That if the above-bounden *Edward Endeavour*, or his Heirs, Executors, Administrators or Assigns shall well and truly pay or cause to be paid to the above-named *Richard Usurer*, or to his certain Attorney, Exers, Adms or Assigns, the just and full Sum of Fifty Pounds of like Current Money aforesaid, and that at or before the 29 Day of *September* next ensuing the Date hereof, without fraud or further delay. Then this present Obligation to be void and of none effect, or else to stand and remain in full force and virtue.

Sealed and Delivered
in the Presence of
N. K. & N. C.

Edward Endeavour

Conditions of Bonds.

Now you have seen a form of Bond and Bill,
You may accept from Debtors which you will,
But in my Judgement a Bond is most sure,
Seal'd before Witnesses that may long endure;
For Bonds with double Surety are made,
When nothing in some Bills of that is said.
And by a Bond the Interest shall recover,
But nothing of thy Interest by the other,
Wherefore if Debtors may uncertain be
In Paying, when 'tis due, if thou can'st see,
Before hand, what thy Loss in this Case may,
Chute and accept a Bond, without delay,
In all thou dost, deal with an honest Man,
And he'll Pay on the Day, if that he can.

The Condition of a Bond for the Payment of a Sum of Money at Several times.

The Condition of this Obligation is, such That if the
above bounden *Dan. Paywell* or his certain Attorney,
Executor or Administrators shall well and truly pay, or cause
to be paid unto the above named *William Walton*, or to his
Executors Administrators or Assigns, the just and full Sum
of Fifty Pounds of like Current Money, and that in manner
and form following, that is to say, the Sum of twelve Pound
Ten Shillings, part thereof, on the 9th day of *June* next
ensuing the date hereof; And twelve Pound ten Shillings,
of like Money on the 9th Day of *August* then next ensuing,
Part of the said 50 Pounds; and Twelve Pounds Ten
Shilling on the 9th Day of *October* then next ensuing; and
Twelve Pounds Ten Shillings the residue of the said Fifty
Pounds, on the 9th Day of *December* then next ensuing.
Then this present Obligation to be void, and of none
effect. But if in any of the afore-mentioned Payments de-
fault be made of any of the said several and respective Sums,
or any part of any of them, on any of the said several and
respective Days or times of Paying above mentioned and
limited, contrary to the true intent and meaning of these
Present, Then to be and remain in full Force and Virtue,
Witness my hand and Delivered *Daniel Paywell.*
in the Presence of *the*

The Condition of an Obligation from Two to One.

The Condition of this Obligation is such That if the above bounden ~~John Money~~ and Charles Gold, or either of them, their, or either of their Heirs, Executors, or Administrators, do well and truly pay or cause to be paid to Samuel Receiver, or to his certain Attorney, Executors or Administrators the just and full Sum of Fifty Pounds, of like Money aforesaid, on the 22nd Day of September next ensuing the Date hereof, Then this present Obligation to be void. &c.

Sealed and Delivered
&c.

The Condition of an Obligation from One to Two.

The Condition of this Obligation is such That if the above bounden R Rich. or his Heirs Executors Administrators or Assigns do well and truly pay or cause to be paid to the above-named Thomas Thomson and George Grig, or to either of them, their, or either of their certain Attorney, Executors or Administrators the just and full Sum of, &c.

The Condition of an Obligation from Two Persons to Two.

The Condition of this Obligation is such, That if the above-bounden Thomas Truse and John Felse, or either of them, their, or either of their certain Attorney, Executors or Administrators do well and truly pay or cause to be paid to the above-named George Allen and Alex Harper, or to either of them, their, or either of their certain Attorney, Executors or Administrators, the just and full Sum of, &c.

And after this manner you may make the Conditions of Obligations not only from Three to Three, but from Ten to Ten, if Occasion require it, only observing to insert in the Obligation the Persons Names, the Town & County where They

They live, and the Trades or Employments that they follow, But various Business requiring various Forms; I shall proceed to set down as I apprehend any ways useful,

But inasmuch as Peace and Concord amongst men is to be preferred to strife and Enmity, which is much Increased upon Difference, and going to Law upon the same; Therefore I shall begin with Arbitration, and Arbitration Bonds, Umpirage and Awards, with some Directions for the same being made well, so as to stand good in Law; in order to avoid further Trouble and Difference concerning such matters and Things as shall be submitted to Arbitration.

Arbitration or *Arbitrament* is greatly favoured by the Common Law, the end thereof being privately to compose Differences between Parties, by the Judgment of honest, and Understanding Men, and to prevent the great Trouble and Charge of Law Suits;

And Arbitrament is an Award, Determination or Judgment made or given between Parties in Controversie, by the Arbitrators or Umpire, elected by the Parties Controversing according to the Submission or Compromise of the said Parties, according to Reason and good Conscience, *Dyer* 236. *10. Eliz. pt. 39.*

It is to be observed, That Criminal Offences, as Treasons, Felonies, &c. as touching the Crime, are not Arbitrable, for it is necessary that such Offenders be made known and punished, *West. Symb. par. 2. Sect. 32.*

Also, Causes Marrimonial seem not Arbitrable, lest men should Separate those whom God hath joyn'd together, *West. ut. Supra.*

And generally, no Chattels real or mixt, no Debt by Deeds or Records, no Annuities nor Free-hold are not of themselves Arbitrable. But yet if men will submit such Things by Bond, such Bond is good, and for the Non-performance of the Award, the Bond will be forfeited.

Every Submission is either General or Special; *General*, as of all Quærels, Actions, Executions, Demands, &c. *Special*, as when 'tis only of certain Matters of Facts, and Things

Things, as of Trespass, or all Actions of Trespass, of Debt or Detinue, &c.

Submissions to Arbitration are two ways, either by Writing or by Word.

Submission by Word only, will not oblige the Party to perform the Award; but an Action on the Case for Reciprocal Promises will lie: And if Money be awarded, an Action of Debt will lie, 5 E. 4. 7. Kebo 600. 2 Keb. 238. 3 Keb. 64

If Submissions are by Word only, 'tis said, either of the Parties may Countermand and Discharge the Arbitrators without Deed or Writing; but if there be divers Persons concerned, one Person cannot discharge the Arbitrators without the consent of the other Companions of the same Party; *Fitz. Arbit. 21* 21. H. 6. 30. *eo. &c.* 28. H. 6. *Fitz. Arb.* 22. If the Submission be by Deed or Writing, the Discharge must be by Deed or Writing.

A single Bond of Arbitration of all Actions without Exception, and without an Umpire, is as follows, viz.

A Bond of Arbitration.

K Now all Man by these Presents, That I *John Quarlesom* of *Trouble-Town* in the County of *Vexal*, Gunsmith, am held and firmly bound unto *Joseph Peaceable* of *Amboy* in the County of *Middlesex*, Sadler, in the Sum of Five Hundred Pounds Current lawful Money of *New-Jersey*, to be paid to the said *Joseph Peaceable*, or to his certain Attorney, Executors or Administrators. To the which payment well and truly to be made, I do hereby bind myself, my Heirs, Executors and Administrators and every of them firmly by these Presents. Sealed with my Seal, dated this 14th Day of *April*, in the 14 Year of his Majesties Reign, &c. Annoq, Domini 1727.

The Condition of this Obligation is such, That if the above bounden *John Quarlesom*, his Heirs, Executors or Administrators and every of them, do and shall, for his and their parts and behalfs, stand to, obey, abide, observe,

and in and by all things well and truly perform the Award, Arbitrament, Determination, final End and Judgment of *Charles Peacemaker of Strifes Town, Gent,* and *John Dought of Suffer Town, Merchant,* Arbitrator, in, and indifferently chosen, elected and named by the said *John Quarlesom*, as on the part and behalf the above-named *Joseph Peceable*, to award, arbitrate, order, judge, determine and finally end to make of, for upon and concerning all and all manner of Actions, and causes of Actions, Suits, Debts, Strifes, Accompts, Reckoning, Sum and Sums, of Money, Trespases, Differences, Quarrels, Bills, Bonds, Specialties, Judgments, Extents, or any other Matter, Thing or Demand whatsoever had, made, moved, risen or depending. *Provided always*, the said Award, Arbitrament, Order, Determination, final End and Judgment, of the said Arbitrators, for and upon the Premises, be made and given up in Writing, under their Hands and Seals, ready to be delivered unto the said Parties, on or before the 19th Day of *May*, next ensuing the Date hereof, Then this present Obligation to be void and of none effect, or else to be and remain in full Force and Virtue,

Sealed and Delivered

in the Presence

T, L, & B. D,

John Quarlesome,

In this Case there must be two Bonds Interchangeably from one party to the other; and if an Umpire be required he must be mentioned in the Condition in these Words following, viz.

The Condition of a Bond of Arbitration, with a Clause for an Umpire.

THE Condition of this Obligation is such, That the above bounden *A. B.* his Heirs, Executors and Administrators, for his and their Parts and Behalfts, shall and do in all Things well and truly stand to, obey, abide, observe, perform, fulfil and keep the Award, Order, Arbitrament, final End and Determination of *C. D.* of *E.* in the County of *F. Gent,* and *G. H.* of *E.* aforesaid, *Gent.*

[according to the Names and Places the Arbitrators are of] Arbitrators indifferently chosen, elected and named, as well on the Part and Behalf of the above bounden A. B. as of the above named I. K. to arbitrate, award, order, judge, and determine of, for, upon or concerning all and all manner of Action or Actions, Cause or Causes of Actions, Suits, Bills, Bonds, Specialties, Judgments, Executions, Extents, Quarrels, Controversies, Treipasses, Damages and Demands whatsoever, at any Time heretofore had made, moved, brought, commenced, sued, prosecuted, done, suffered, committed or depending, by or between the said Parties, so as the said Award, Arbitrement, Order, Determination, final End and Judgment of the said Arbitrators of, for, or upon the Premises be made or draw up in Writing under their Hands and Seals, and delivered or ready to be delivered to the said Parties, or such of them as shall desire the same. on or before the first Day of May next ensuing the Date of these Presents; then this Obligation to be void, and of none Effect, or else to stand and remain in full Force and Vertue.

As is the Clause for an Umpire, in case the Arbitrators cannot agree by the same Time, after the Words (next ensuing the Date of these Presents) add as followeth;

And if the said Arbitrators shall not make and draw up their Award in Writing, as aforesaid, on or before the first Day of May, if then the said A. B. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, and every of them, do and shall stand to, abide, observe, perform and keep the Award, Umpirage, final End and Judgment of M. N. of O. Justice of the said County F. Esq; Umpire indifferently elected & chosen betwixt the said Parties for ending and composing of all the Differences aforesaid, so as the said Umpire do make and draw up his said Award, Umpirage and Determination in Writing (indented) under his Hand and Seal ready to be delivered to the Parties, or such of them as shall desire the same, on or before the tenth Day of the said Month of May next ensuing the Date of these Presents, then this Obligation to be void and of none Effect, or else to stand and remain

Form of an Award.

131^e

in full Force and Verrue. See pag. 134. for the last Act of Parliament, to make the Submission a Rule of Court.

If a Submission be concerning a Title of Land, *M. West* in his *Symb.* Part 2 Sect. 43. advises to word it as follows.

As well of, for and concerning the Right, Title, Interest, Use, Possession, and Demand, of and in the Mannor of *S.* with the Appurtenances in *S.* in the County of *Y.* and all Lands, Tenements and Hereditaments, with the Appurtenances in *S.* aforesaid in the said *A. B.* and his Assigns, as of and upon all Actions, Treuissles, Sais, Quarrels, Debts, Duties, Debates, Grievs, Inconveniences and Demands, had, moved, started, or depending between the said Parties concerning the said Mannor, Tenements, and Premises, or any Part thereof; and also if the said *A. B.* before the Feast of *I.* now next coming, do shew unto the said Arbitrators all such Writings as he hath concerning the said Mannor and Premises at such Time and Place as the said Arbitrators shall appoint for the Sight thereof. — So always that, (&c. as in others) That then, &c. as before, in others.

The Election of Arbitrators, and the Submission to them being thus made, It is the Duty of Parties to come before the Arbitrators, and shew their Grievances, and the Arbitrators ought to hear them and their Evidences, and Judge accordingly. And in the next place to draw up their Award and Cause or Publish the same to the Parties so Submitting their Differences, and that within the Time limited in the Award, or else it is void, nor is it any Award before it be published.

The Form and of an Award.

IN all People to whom this present Writing of Award induceth shall come, *A. B.* of *So.* and *C. D.* of *So.* Arbitrators mutually chosen, elected and named, between *E. F.* of *So.* and *G. H.* of *So.* to arbitrate,

Form of an Umpirage.

honor, award, order, judge and determine, of, for, upon and concerning all and all manner of Action and Actions, Cause and Causes of Actions, Suits, Bills, Bonds, Specialties, Judgments, Executions, Extents, Quarrels, Controversies, Trespases, Damages and Demands whatsoever, at any Time before our said Election, had, made, moved, commenced, sued, prosecuted, done suffered or committed by or between the said Parties, as by the mutual Bonds or Writings Obligatory of the said Parties, with the Conditions thereof (Relations ~~to~~ had. may more fully appear.) Now Know Ye, That we the said Arbitrators in pursuance of our said Election, and the Power given us thereby, for the Ending of all Matters as us therein submitted, do Arbitrate, Award, Order, Judge and Determine upon the Premises, as follows, First, That In Witness whereof we have to these our present Indentures of Award, Interchangeably set our Hands and Seals, &c.

The Form of an Umpirage.

TO All Christian People to whom these Presents shall come, Know Ye, That I. M. N. of K. Umpire indifferently chosen by E. F. of, C and G. H. of, L. having deliberately heard and understood the Grievs, Allegations and Proofs of both the said Parties, and willing, as much as in me lieth, to set the said Parties at Unity and good Accord, do by these Presents arbitrate, award, order, deem, decree and judge, that the said E. F. his Executors or Administrators or Assigns, or some of them, do well and truly pay or cause to be paid unto the said G. H. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, at or in the dwelling House of J. K. situate in L. in the said County of M. the sum of Ten Pounds of lawful Money of England on the first day of May next ensuing the Date hereof; and that upon Payment thereof, either of the said E. F. and G. H. shall seal, subscribe, and at his several Act and Deed, deliver unto the other of them a general Release in Writing of all Matters, Actions, Suits, Causes of Actions, Bonds, Bills, Covenants, Con-

Overties and Demands whatsoever, which either of them may, might, or in any wise ought to have of and against the other of them by Reason aforesaid, or means of any Matters, or Cause or Thing whatsoever, from the Beginning of the World until the 24th Day of *August* now last past. In Witness whereof I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal the first Day of *October*, in the thirteenth Year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord, *George*, of Great Britain, France and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith, &c. Annoq; Domini, 1727.

It ought to be carefully observed by all Arbitrators, as well as the Umpires chosen, to give their Award or Umpirage for and concerning such Matters and Things as are submitted by the Parties who chuse or appoint them; for if they give their Award concerning matters that are not submitted, the Award is void, *Pl Com. 396. a.*

But if the Award is made for more than is Submitted, the Award is good for that part which is Submitted, and void for the rest.

In Trespass for taking away Goods, the Defendant pleaded an Award, that because the Defendant had taken away the Plaintiffs Goods, he should therefore carry and redeliver them to the Plaintiff, which he had done, this was held naught; for re-delivery of the Plaintiffs own Goods could be no Satisfaction, much less the re-deliveriey of the part of they, 45. *E. 16. 2. H. 5. 2. a. 12. H. 7. 14. 15.*

But it had been Good if the Defendant had been ordered to have carried the Goods to such a place for the Plaintiffs Benefit, 2. *H. 7. 2. 14. H. 4. 14.*

So where there is an Acquittal or express Satisfaction awarded on both sides, or on one side only, with an Implied Discharge on the other, the Award on such side is good.

If it be found that one has done but one Penny worth of Damage more than the other, and that penny being awarded, and the other thereupon shall be quit against him, is said to be good, 20. *H. 6. 1. 21. H. 6. 9. Dyers, 350.*

If each party Submitting to the Award hath power by the

the Award to Compel the other Party either by Law or Equity to perform the Award, the Award is good, altho' the Party be thereby put to his Action. *Mich. 24. Car. B. R. Pract. Reg. 18.*

Every Arbitrament ought to be expounded and intended according to the Intent of the Arbitrators, and not literally, *10. Co. fol. 57. b.*

The Parties shall have a reasonable time allowed them for the Performance of an Award, if no Time be limited, *20. E. 4. 8. 6.*

Note, By a Stat. of 9 and 10 W. 3. c. 15. After the 11th of May, 1717, it was enacted, That all Merchants & Traders, and others, desiring to end any Controversy, Suit or Quarrel (for which there is no other Remedy but by personal Action or Suit in Equity) by Arbitration, may agree, that their Submission of the Suit to the Award or Umpirage of any Person or Persons, should be made a Rule of any of his Majesty's Courts of Record which the Parties shall chuse; and may insert such their Agreement in their Submission, or the Condition of the Bond or Promise: And upon producing an Affidavit of such inserting, and upon Reading and Filing such Affidavit in the Court so chose, the same may be entered of Record in such Court, and a Rule of Court shall thereupon be made, that the Parties shall submit to, and finally be concluded by such Arbitration or Umpirage; and in case of Disobedience thereto, the Party neglecting or refusing shall be subject to all the Penalties of contemning a Rule of Court, and Process shall issue accordingly, which shall not be stop'd or delayed; unless it appear on Oath, that the Arbitrators or Umpire misbehaved themselves, or that such Award was corruptly, or unduly procured. In which Case such Arbitration or Umpirage shall be void and set aside by any Court of Law or Equity; so as such Corruption or undue Practice be complained of in the Court where the Rule is made for such Arbitration, before the last Day of the next Term after such Arbitration made and paid due to the Parties.

Which Clause I presume, may be to the Effect following, *viz.*

And

The Condition of Bonds.

235

And the above bound *A. B.* doth agree and desire, that this his Submission to the Award above-mentioned, be made a Rule of her Majesty's Court of Queen's Bench, pursuant to the late Act of Parliament for this purpose provided.

The like for the other Party in the Condition of his Bond of Submission.

The Condition of a Bond to perform Covenants, specified in a lease of Indenture, &c.

THe Condition of this Obligation is such, That if the above bounden *William Sime*, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, they, or any of them, shall and do for his and their parts, in all things well and truly observe, perform, fulfil, accomplish, pay and keep all and singular the Covenants, Grants, Articles, Clauses, Proviso's, Payments, Conditions and Agreements whatsoever which on his and their parts and behalfs are or ought to be observed, performed, fulfil'd, accomplish'd paid and kept, compriz'd & mention'd in a pair of Indentures, bearing even date with these Presents, made or expressed to be made between the said *William Sime* of the one part, and the above-named *Robert Davis* of the other part, and that in and by all things, according to the contents, purposes, true intent and meaning of the same Indenture, without Fraud or covey; Then this present Obligation to be void and of none effect, or else to be and remain in full Force and Virtue.

A Condition of a Counter Bond to save harmless from one Party to another.

THe Condition of this Obligation is such, That whereas the above named *John Rowe* at the special instance and request of *Richard Woodby* of *Jamaica* in *Queens County*, Genl. is held and firmly bound unto *Thomas Gwin*, of *New-York*, Merchant, in and by one Obligation bearing date exactly with these Presents, in the Penal Sum of one hundred Pounds current Money of *New-York*, Conditioned for the true and just Payment of Fifty Pounds of like lawful Money

1786

Receipt for a Legacy,

unto the said *Thomas Gowin*, his Executors, Administrators or Assigns on the 12th Day of *August*, next ensuing the date of the recited Obligation, as by the said Obligation and the Condition thereof, relation being thereunto had, doth and may more at large appear. If therefore the said *Richard Woodby*, his Heirs, Executors or Administrators, or any of them, shall and do well and truly pay, or cause to be paid unto the said *Thomas Gowin*, his Executors or Administrators, or Assigns the Sum of Fifty Pounds current lawful Money of *New-York*, the said 12 Day of *August*, next ensuing the Date of the said Obligation before mentioned, in discharge of the said Obligation; then this present Obligation to be void and of none effect, or else to stand good, and remain in full force and virtue.

Sealed and delivered, &c.

A Discharge proper to be given upon the Receipt of a Legacy.

R Eceived the twenty first Day of *May*, 1727. by me *William Lambwool* of *Hempstead* in *Queens County* on the island of *Nassau*, of *David Yates* and *Morgan Shaw*, of the said Place and County, Executors of *Caleb Welling* of *Flushing*, in the County aforesaid, late deceased, the Sum of Twenty two Pounds, Five Shillings & Six Pence, of current Money of *New-York*, being a Legacy given unto me the said *William Lambwool*, by the said *Caleb Welling*, in and by his Last Will and Testament; of which said Sum of Twenty two Pounds, Five Shillings & Six Pence, and all other Debts, Duties, Sum and Sums of Money and Demands whatsoever, I the said *William Lambwool* do acquit and fully discharge the said *David Yates* and *Morgan Shaw*, their Heirs, Executors, Administrators and every of them forever by these Presents. In Witness whereof, I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal this twenty first Day of *May*, 1727.

Sealed and Delivered in

W. Lambwool.

in Presence of

J. P. & S. B.

A Counter Condition to save Bail Harmless.

THE Condition of this Obligation is such, That whereas the above-named C. D, at the special Instance and Request of the above-bounden A, B, together with the said C, D, is bound to A. N, Esq; High-Sheriff of the County of L, in the Sum of £ 100, Conditioned for the Appearance of the said A, B, before his Majesty's Justices at the next Summer Sessions to be held at the City-Hall of the City of New-York, on Tuesday the 5th Day of June next, to answer H, P, in a Plea of, &c. as by the said Obligation and Condition thereof, more at large appears. Now if the above Bound A. B. do and shall appear according to the said Sheriff's Bail Bond, & as the Law in such Case requires; and if the said A, B, his Heirs, Executors and Administrators shall also from time to time, and at all times hereafter, save harmless and indemnify him the said C. D, his Exers. and Adms. of and from all Damages, Costs and Charges which he, them, or any of them shall or may at any Time hereafter be put unto by reason of his the said C, D's being Bound for the Appearance of the said A, B. as aforesaid, Then this Obligation to be Void, and of none effect, or else, &c.

A Condition to Marry a Person, or pay, &c.

THE Condition, &c. That if the above-bound A. B. do on or before, &c. next ensuing the Date of the above-written Obligation, Espouse and Marry according to the Usage of the Church of England E. D Daughter of, &c. If for the said E. D. will therunto Consent, And the Laws of this Realm permit the said Marriage to be consummated: Or if it shall happen the said A. B. shall not marry and take to Wife the said E. D. as aforesaid, if then the said A. B. do and shall well and truly pay or cause to be paid unto the said E. D, her Executors, &c. the full Sum of &c. in and upon &c. next ensuing the said Day of &c. above-mentioned: Then &c. Or else, &c.

A Condition to pay back part of a Legacy, if any Debt of the Testator shall after appear to be unpaid.

THE Condition, &c. That whereas the above bound John Jones, hath had and received of the above named James Wild, Executor of the last Will and Testament of one Jacob Tomb, of New York, deceased, the Sum of 50l. of &c. Legacy given and bequeathed by the said J. T. to the said J. W. If therefore any Debt hereafter of the said J. T. shall happen to be demanded or received and paid by the said J. W. his Executors or Administrators, and the said J. J. his Executors or Administrators, shall within one Month after notice thereof, well and truly pay or cause to be paid to the said J. W. his Executors or Assigns, a Ratable Part and Proportion back again towards the satisfaction of the said Debt. That then, &c.

Condition to give account and render the Stock delivered to one who is to carry on a Trade at half profit.

THE Condition of this Obligation is such, That whereas the above-named, W. K. at the request of the above-named J. C. hath entrusted and committed into the hands of the said J. C. divers Goods, Working-tools, Plate, Money and Ware being in the whole to the value of _____ for the furnishing of the said J. C. with a necessary Stock to exercise the Trade of a Goldsmith. And whereas it is agreed between the said J. C. and W. K. that the said J. C. shall work upon and improve the said Stock in buying and selling, and for his Labour and Pains therein shall receive and have to his own Use the one Half of the Profit thereof to be made, keeping the Stock entire, and paying unto the said W. K. the other half of the Profit thereof to be made. If therefore the said J. C. his Executors or Administrators do and shall within six Months next after notice to be given, or left in writing at the place of his usual abode, deliver unto the said W. K. his Executors or Administrators _____ of lawful Money of England for the Stock of the said J. C. or the value thereof in Goods, Working-tools, Plate or Goldsmiths Wares. But if the said J. C. shall happen

before such notice given or left in writing as aforesaid; then if the Heirs, Executors or Administrators of the said J. C. shall within twenty days next after such the death of the said J. C. pay and deliver unto the said W. K. his Executors or Administrators the said or the value thereof as aforesaid; And also if the said J. C. do and shall from time to time yearly, and every year at the Feasts, &c. until the said or the value thereof, as aforesaid, shall be paid and delivered unto the said W. K. his Executors or Administrators, pay or cause to be paid unto the said W. K. his Executors or Administrators the moiety or one half of all such sum and sums of Money as be the said J. C. shall have received or gained by working in the Trades of a Goldsmith or Silversmith, or by buying and selling any Wares belonging to either of the said Trades; the first payment thereof to be made at the Feast of the Annunciation of the Blessed Mary next ensuing the date hereof, Then this Obligation to be void, &c.

A short Assignment of a Bond.

TO all, &c. Whereas R. C. of, &c. in and by one Obligation bearing date, &c. standeth Bound to I. F. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, in the Penal Sum of 20 L. with a Condition for the Payment of 10 L. on the 10th day of March next ensuing the date of the said Obligation, as by the said Obligation and Condition it doth more fully appear. Now Know ye, That I the said I. F. for divers good Causes and Considerations me herewith moving, Have bargained, sold, Assigned and set-over, and by these Presents do fully, clearly and absolutely bargain, sell, assign and set-over unto F. I. of, &c. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, as well the said Obligation, as the said Sum of Money therein mentioned, to the proper use and behoof of the said F. I. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, and without any account therefore to be given unto me the said I. F. my Executors, Administrators or Assigns, or any of them, In Witness, &c.

An Assignment of Bond.

W Herets A. B. of M, in and by one Bond or Obligation, bearing date . . . became bound to C. D. in the Penal Sum of . . . Conditioned for the Payment of the Sum of . . . at a Day long since past, as by the said Bond and Condition thereof may appear. And wheres there now remans due to the said C. D. for Principal and Interest on the said Bond, the Sum of . . . Now Know All Men by these Presents, That the said C. D. for and in Consideration of the Sum of . . . to him in hand paid by E. F. the Receipt whereof the said C. D. doth hereby acknowledge, He the said C. D. hath assigned and set over, and by these Presents doth assign and set over to the said E. F. the said recited Bond or Obligation, and the Monies thereupon due and owing, and all his Right, Title and Interest of, in and to the same. And for the better receiving and Recovering the said Sum that is now due, or hereafter may become due, the said C. D. hath made, ordained, constituted and appointed, and by these Presents doth make, ordain, &c. the said E. F. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns his true and lawful Attorney and Attornies Irrevokable, for him, & in his Name, and in the Name and Names of his Exers. and Admrs. but for the sole and proper Use and Benefit of the said E. F. his Exers. Admrs. and Assigns to ask, demand sue for, recover & receive the same. Giving and granting unto my said Attorney and Attornies, by these Presents, my whole Strength and Authority in and about the Premises, to take and use all lawful ways and means for the Recovery thereof; and one or more Attornies under him to constitute and appoint, and at pleasure to Revoke. And on Payment thereof to deliver up and cancel the said Bond, and give sufficient Discharges therefore. And the said C. D. doth Covenant with the said E. F. That he the said C. D. hath not received, nor will receive the said Monies due on the said Bond, or any part

part thereof; neither hath, shall or will Release or Discharge the same, or any part thereof, but will own and Ratifie all Lawful Proceedings for Recovery thereof, he the said E. F. savi g the said C. D. harmless from all Costs and Charges that may happen thereby. In Witness, &c.

A Declaration of a Bond, made in a Third Persons Name upon Trust

K Now Ye, That whereas A. B. by his Obligations dated (Or you may Recite the Bond) Now Know Ye, That I E. F. of G. do hereby Acknowledge and Confess, That altho' the said Bond is made in my Name, yet nevertheless it is so taken only upon Trust and Confidence in me Reposed by H. I. of K. and L. his Wife, and to and for the Uses, Intents and Purposes hereafter mention'd, *That is to say*, That he the said H. I. shall have, receive and take the Use and benefit of the said Bond, during the Joynt and Natural Lives of them the said H. I. and L. his Wife; and that the said Principal Sum, with the Interest thereof, after the Decease of either of the said - - - - - to remain, and to be to and for the use of the Sum or of them, and for no other use or Purpose whatsoever. In Witness, &c.

HAVING thus given you Presidents of the Conditions of Bonds most generally in use, for your further and better understanding of the Nature of a Bond, you are to Note, That

A BOND is a Deed in Writing whereby one Person doth bind himself to another to pay a Sum of Money, or perform some other Act or Thing. It consists of two parts, viz. the *Obligation*, whereby the Party is bound, and the *Condition*, which expresses what Money is to be paid, or Thing to be performed, and the Time of Performance.

If a Bond has no Date, or a Wrong Date, or contain false Name, and if some English words be not right spell'd, it will be Seal'd and Deliver'd, it is good. But if the Words at the end of the Condition, *That then this Obligation to be void*

be omitted, the Condition will be void, but not the Obligation, which in this case remains single.

The Condition of a Bond must be to do a Thing Lawful and Possible, or else it is void.

If no Place is mentioned for performing a Condition, the Obligor must find out the Person of the Obligee, and render the Money, or else the Obligation will be forfeited; therefore it is necessary to mention the Place where the Money is to be paid, as well as the Time. If no Time be mentioned, the Money is due presently. Or if the Time of Payment in the Condition of a Bond is said to be 30th of February or the 31st of March, &c. whenas there are no such Days, it shall not make void the Condition. But if the Obligor be to do a sole Act, without the Limitation of Time, and this Act is to be done at a certain Place, as to go to England, &c. he hath the Time of his whole Life for the Performance. Where several Days and Times are appointed for Payment of Money, the Obligation is not forfeited till all the Days are Expired.

The Form of a Bill of Sale for Goods

K Now all men by these presents, That I *William Graftmore* of *Westchester* in the County of *Westchester*, Weaver, for and in consideration of the Sum of Forty Pounds, of current Lawful Money of *New-York*, to me in Hand paid by *James Morewit* of *Rye*, in the County aforesaid, Yeoman, whereof I do hereby acknowledge the Receipt, and my self therewith fully and entirely satisfied, have Bargained, Sold, Set over, and delivered, and by these presents, in plain and open Market, according to the just and due form of the Law, in that Case made and provided, do bargain, Set over and deliver unto the said *Ja. Morewit*, or ——— To have and to hold the said Bargained Premises unto the said *James Morewit*, his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, to the only proper use and behoof of the said *Ja. Morewit*, his Executors, Administrators and Assigns forever. And I the said *William Graftmore*, for my self, my Executors and Administrators the said Bargained Premises, unto the said *James Morewit*, his Executors and Administrators

ministrators and Assigns against all and all manner of Persons shall and will warrant; and for ever defend by these Presents. In Witness whereof, together with the delivery of the Bargain'd Premises, I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal the Tenth Day of *May*, in the - - - Year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord *George*, King of *Great Britain*, &c. and of our Lord God, 1727.

A Sale of Lands by Lease and Release.

THis Indenture, &c. Between *A. B.* of the one part, and *C. D.* of the other part, Witnesseth, That the said *A. B.* for and in Consideration of the Sum of 50 £. of lawful Money of *Great-Britain*, to him in hand paid by the said *C. D.* the Receipt whereof he doth hereby Acknowledge, Hath Bargained and Sold, and by these Presents doth Bargain and sell unto the said *C. D.* all that &c. and the Reversion and Reversions, Remainder and Remainders, together with the Rents and Profits of the Premises, and of every part and parcel thereof; *To have and to hold* the said, &c. and all and singular the Premises herein mentioned, and intended to be hereby bargained and sold, with their and every of their Appurtenances, unto the said *C. D.* his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, from the Day before the Date hereof, for and during the Term of one whole year, from thence next ensuing, and fully to be compleat and ended; *Yielding and Paying therefore* the Yearly Rent of one Pepper Corn at the Feast of *St. Michael* the Arch-Angel only, if the same be lawfully demanded, to the intent, that by virtue of these presents, and of the Statute for Transferring of Uses into Possession, the said *C. D.* may be in the Actual Possession of the Premises, and be enabled to accept a Grant of the Reversion and Inheritance thereof, to him and his Heirs. *In Witness, &c.*

The Release.

THis Indenture made, &c. between *A. B.* and *E.* his Wife of the one part, and *C. D.* of the other part,
Witnesseth,

Witnesseth, That the said A. B. and E. his Wife, for and in Consideration of the Sum of - - - current Money of £. to the said A. B. in hand paid by the said C. D. at or before the enfealing and delivery of these Presents, the Receipt whereof he the said A. B. doth hereby acknowledge, and thereof, and every Part and Parcel thereof Doth clearly acquit and discharge the said C. D. his Executors and Administrators, and every of them, by these Presents, *Have Given, Granted, Alienated, Released and Confirmed*, and by these Presents do Give, Grant, Alien, Release and Confirm unto the said C. D. and to his Heirs and Assigns, all that (*Describe the Premises*) together with all and singular the Houses, Edifices, Buildings, Orchards, Gardens, Pastures, Commons, Woods, Woodlands, Water, Water-Courses, Mines, Minerals, Profits, Commodities, Hereditaments and Appurtenances whatsoever, to the said - - - belonging or in any wise appertaining, or therewithal used, occupied, or enjoyed, or accepted, reputed, taken and known as Part, Parcel and Member thereof; (All which said Premises are now in the actual Possession of him the said C. D. by virtue of one Indenture of Bargain and Sale to him thereof made, for the Term of One Year, bearing Date the Day before the Date of these Presents, and made between the said A. B. and E. his Wife, on the one part, and the said C. D. of the other part, and by virtue of the Statute for Transferring of Use into Possession) And all the Estate, Right, Title, Interest, Use, Trust, Property, Reversion, Claim and Demand whatsoever, of them the said A. B. and E. his Wife, of, in and to the Premises, and every or any part or parcel thereof, and the Reversion and Reversions, Remainder and Remainders yearly, and other Rents and Profits of the Premises, and of every Part and Parcel thereof, Together with all and singular Deeds, Evidences, Writings, Records, Exemplification of Records, Escripts and Minuments whatsoever, touching and concerning the said Premises only, or only any Part or Parcel thereof. *To Have and to Hold* the said - - - and all and singular other the Premises herein before mentioned, meant or intended to be hereby granted, alienated, released or confirmed, and every Part and Parcel thereof,

thereof, with their and every of their Appurtenances, unto the said C. D. his Heirs and Assigns, to the only proper Use and Behoof of him the said C. D. and his Heirs and Assigns forever. And the said A. B. for himself; his Heirs, Executors and Administrators, doth Covenant, Promise, Grant and Agree to and with the said C. D. his Heirs and Assigns, and every of them by these Presents, in manner and form following (*That is to say*) That he the said A. B. at the Time of the Enfeoffing and Delivery of these Presents, is seized of and in the said Messuage, &c. and all and singular other the Premises, in and by these Presents granted, bargained and sold, with all and every their Rights, Members and Appurtenances, of a good, pure, perfect and absolute Estate of Inheritance in Fee Simple, without any Condition, Reversion, Remainder or Limitation of any Use or Uses, Estate or Estates, in or to any Person or Persons whatsoever, to Alter, Change, Defeat, Determine or make Void the same. And that the said A. B. at the Time of enfeoffing and Delivery of these Presents, hath full Power, good right and lawful Authority to grant, bargain, sell and convey all and singular the before hereby granted or mentioned to be granted Premises, with their and every of their Appurtenances unto the said C. D. his Heirs and Assigns in manner and form aforesaid. And that he the said C. D. his Heirs and Assigns and every of them shall and may by force and virtue of these Presents at all Times hereafter lawfully, peaceably and quietly have, hold, use, occupy and possess the said, &c. and all and singular the before granted Premises, with their and every of their Rights Members and Appurtenances, and have, receive and take the Rents, Issues and Profits thereof to his and their own proper use and behoof for ever, without any lawful Lett, Suit, Trouble, Denial, Interruption, Eviction or Disturbance of the said A. B. his Heirs or Assigns, or from any other Person or Persons whatsoever lawfully claiming by, from or under him, them or any of them, or by his or their means, act or consent, Title, interest, privity or procurement: And that free and clear, and freely and clearly exonerated and discharged, or otherwise from Time to Time well and sufficiently saved and kept harmless

herein by the said *A. B.* his Heirs and Assigns of and from all and all manner of jointer and other Gifts, Grants, Bargains, Sales, Leases, Mortgages, jointures, Dowers, Tails of Dower, Statutes-merchant, and of the Staple, Recognizances, Extents, Judgments, Executions, Uses, Estates, Rents and Arrerages of Rent, Forfeitures, Fines, Issues and Amerceaments, and of and from all and singular other Tithes, Incumbrances and Demands whatsoever, had, made, contracted, suffered, omitted or done by the said *A. B.* or his Assigns, or by any other Person or Persons whatsoever, lawfully claiming by, from or under him, them or any of Them (the Rents and Services which from henceforth from time to Time shall grow due and payable to Chief Lord or Lords of the Fee or Fees of the Premises only excepted and exceptized.) And further the said *A. B.* for himself, his Heirs, Executors and Administrators doth covenant, Promise and agree to and with the said *C. D.* his Heirs and Assigns, That he the said *A. B.* his Heirs, &c. shall and will at all Times, during the space of - - years, next ensuing the date hereof, and upon the reasonable Request, and at the Cost and Charges in the Law of the said *C. D.* his Heirs or Assigns, make, do and execute all and every such further, lawful and reasonable Assurance and Conveyance in the Law, for the farther Assuring and Conveying all and singular the before granted Premises and Appurtenances unto the said *C. D.* his Heirs and Assigns, as by the said *C. D.* his Council learned in the Law shall be reasonably advised, devised or required, *Provided*, the said *A. B.* or his, &c. be not required to Travel above - - - Miles from his or their Dwelling Houses to make such further Assurance. *In Witness, &c.*

A Lease of a House.

This Indenture made the 4th Day, &c. by and between *A. B.* of *M.* on the one part, and *C. D.* of *N.* on the other part, *Witnesseth*, That the said *A. B.* for and in consideration of the yearly Rent, Covenants, Conditions and

and Agreements herein after contained, on the part and behalf of the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, *Have* demised, granted, and to Farm-Let, and by these Presents doth demise, grant and to Farm-Let unto the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns all that Farm or Plantation, with the Houses, out-Houses, Barns, Stables, Orchards, Gardens, Meadows, Pasture Ground, Advantages, Ways, Easements, Emoluments or Profits arising, belonging or appertaining to the hereby demised Premises, or any part thereof situate standing and being in
 To have and to hold all and singular the hereby demised Premises unto the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns from the ----- Day -----, for and during the Term of ----- years to be fully completed and ended. *Yielding and Paying* therefore yearly and every year the yearly Rent or Sum of ----- current Money of ----- to be paid Quarterly in four equal payments. And it is further Covenanted by and between the said Parties, That, *&c.* And the said A. B. for himself, his Heirs, Executor, Administrators and Assigns and for every of them, doth covenant, promise, grant and agree to and with the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns and to and with every of them by these Presents, That he the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns and every of them, for and under the yearly Rent, Covenants, Clauses and Conditions herein before expressed, on the part and behalf of the said C. D. his Executors and Assigns, to be paid and performed as aforesaid, shall and may peaceably have, hold, use, occupy & enjoy all and singular the hereby demised Premises, and every part thereof without any let, trouble, molestation, eviction, ejection, interruption or denial of the said A. B. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, or of any other Person or Persons whatsoever, claiming, or that shall or may claim by, from or under him, them or any of them. *In Witness* whereof the said Parties to these Presents interchangeably have put their Hands and Seals the Day and Year first above-written.

Sealed and Delivered, &c.

An Assignment of a Lease.

This Indenture made, &c. Between I. F. of, &c. of the one part, and R. C. of the other part, *Witnesseth*, That G. P. of - - in and by one Indenture of Lease, bearing Date - - - for the Consideration therein mentioned, did Demise, Grant and to Farm-Let unto the said I. F. All that (*Recite the Premises*) as in and by the said recited Indenture of Lease (Reference being thereunto had) doth more fully and at large appear. *And this Indenture further Witnesseth*, That the said I. F. for and in Consideration of the Sum of - - - to him in hand paid before the Ensealing and Delivery of these Presents, by the said R. C. the Receipt whereof he the said I. F. doth hereby acknowledge, and thereof, and every part thereof doth hereby fully acquit, exonerate and discharge the said R. C. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, Hath granted, bargained, sold, assigned and set over, And by these Presents doth grant, bargain, sell, assign and set over unto the said R. C. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, All that &c. and all the Estate, Right, Title, Interest, Possession, Term of years to come, claim and demand whatsoever, which he the said J. F. now hath or may, ought or should have or claim in or to the Messuage and Premises with the Appurtenances afore-raid, by force and virtue of the said recited Indenture of Lease, *To have and to hold the said, &c.* And also the said recited Indenture of Lease, and all the Estate, Right, Title, Interest and Term of years, before in and by these presents, bargained, sold, assigned and set over unto the said R. C. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, to his and their proper use and behoof, during the residue of the said Term, by the Indenture of Lease granted and yet to come, and unexpired, in as large, ample and beneficial manner to all intents and purposes, as he the said A. B. now hath or might, should or ought to have, and enjoy the same by force and virtue of the said recited Indenture of Lease or otherwise howsoever; And the said A. B. for himself, his, &c. doth covenant and

and agree to and with the said C. D. his, &c. that notwithstanding any act or thing by the said A. B. done to the contrary, the said recited Indenture of Lease is a good, sure, perfect and indefeazable Lease in the Law, at the time of the enfealing and delivery of these presents, and so shall stand, remain, continue and be unto the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, for and during the remainder of the Term of years thereby granted, under the Rents and Covenants therein mentioned and contained; And also that the said E. D. his Executor, &c. paying the Rent reserved, and performing the Covenants, Conditions and Agreements in the above recited Lease contained, shall and may peaceably and quietly have, hold, occupy, possess and enjoy the said, &c. for and during the residue of the Term aforesaid, without the lett, suit, trouble or interruption of him the said A. B. his, &c. or of any other Person or Persons, lawfully claiming or to claim any right or interest in the Premises, by, from or under him, them or any of them. *In Witness, &c.*

An Assignment of Rent, reserved upon a Lease.

THIS Indenture made, &c. between A. B. on the one part, and C. D. of--on the other part, *Witnesseth*, That whereas the said A. B. by his Indenture of Lease, bearing date ---- did demise and to farm Let all that---- for the yearly Rent of 20 l. *per annum*, payable as by the same Indenture of Lease (Reference being thereunto had) may at large appear. Now the said A. B. for and in Consideration of the Sum of ---- to him in hand paid by the said said C. D. the Receipt thereof he doth hereby acknowledge, hath given, granted, assigned, and set over, and by these Presents doth fully, clearly and absolutely give, grant, transport, assign & set over unto the said C. D. the said yearly Rent of 20 l. *per annum*, reserved to him the said C. D. his Executors & Assigns, upon and by the said Lease, together with the Reversion of all and singular the Premises, by the said Indentures of Lease assigned, and also all his Right, Title, Interest, Property, Claim

Claim and Demand, of in and to all singular the Premises, together with the counterpart of the said recited Indentures of Lease, To Have and to Hold, Receive and Enjoy the aforesaid yearly Rent of 30*l.* reserved by the said Lease, and all his said Right, Title, Interest, Property, Claim and Demand of, in and to the same, unto him the said C. D. his Exors, Adms and Assigns from henceforth for and during all the Residue of the said Term of — years yet to come, and mentioned in the said Lease, in as large and ample manner and force, to all intents and purposes, as he the said A. B. his Exors, Adms and Assigns, should or might have done, if these Presents had not been made. And the said A. B. doth by these Presents assign, authorize and appoint the said C. D. his Exors, Adms and Assigns his true and lawful Attorney Irrevocable, of him the said A. B. to ask, levy, demand and receive the same Rent from time to time, as the same shall grow due, and to use all such lawful ways and means for the Recovery and Obtaining thereof from time to time, as he the said A. B. his Exors, Adms or Assigns may, might or could have done if these Presents had not been made; and to make any Acquittance of and for the same, &c. In Witness, &c.

NOTE,

A LEASE is a Contract put in Writing for a Temporary enjoyment of a Real thing, under a certain Rent, and such other Conditions as are mutually agreed upon betwixt the Parties. All Leases for Years ought to have a certain beginning and time of ending. Leases for Years are called *Chattels*, and go to Executors. If a Tenant permit Houses to go to Decay or cut, waste and destroy Timber, or take away Wainscot, Doors, or other things fixed to the Freehold, it is Waste. But if Wainscot or other things are fixed by the Tenant, they may be taken away by him, provided it be before the end of his Term, and does not damage the Freehold. If a Tenant for Life, sows his Land, and dye before the Corn is reaped, his Executors shall have the Corn. But if a Tenant for Term of Years, sows his Land, and his Term expire before the Corn is ripe, the Landlord is entitled to it, because he sowed his Term would expire before the Corn was ripe.

An Exchange of Lands;

This Indenture made, &c. between A. B. of, &c. of
 the one Part, and C. D. of, &c. of the other Part,
 Witnesseth, That the said A. B. Hath Given and Granted, and
 by these Presents Doth Give and Grant unto the said C. D.
 All that Messuage, &c. lying and being, &c. To have and to
 hold the said Messuage or Tenement and Premises above men-
 tioned with the Appurtenances, unto the said C. D. his
 Executors, Administrators and Assigns, for and during the
 Term of Ninety-nine Years next and immediately ensuing,
 &c. and fully to be completed and ended, If the said A. B. &c.
 shall happen so long to live, In Exchange for one messu-
 age, &c. lying and being in, &c. Given and Granted in
 Exchange by the said C. D. And this Indenture further
 Witnesseth, That the said C. D. for the Considerations afore-
 said, Hath Given and Granted, and by these Presents doth
 Give and Grant, unto the said A. B. All that the said Messuage,
 &c. called, &c. last above mentioned, To have and to hold
 the said Messuage or Tenement, and Premises last above
 mentioned, with the Appurtenances, unto the said A. B.
 his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, for and during
 the Term of Ninety-nine Years next and immediately ensuing,
 &c. and fully to be Completed and Ended, If he the said C. D.
 &c. shall happen so long to live, In Exchange for the
 said Messuage or Tenement and Premises first above mentioned
 to be Given and Granted in Exchange by the said A. B. And
 the said A. B. for himself, his Executors and Administrators,
 Doth Covenant and Grant to and with the said C. D. his
 Executors and Administrators, That he the said C. D. his
 Executors, Administrators and Assigns, shall and may from
 Time to Time, and at all Times, during the said Term hereby
 Granted, peaceably and quietly have, hold, occupy, possess
 and enjoy the said Messuage or Tenement and Premises first
 above mentioned, without the Let, Trouble, Hindrance,
 Molestation, Interruption or Denial of him the said A. B.
 his Executors and Assigns, and every of them, and of all and
 every

Lease of a House,

every other Person and Persons whatsoever, claiming in, by, from or under him, them or any of them. And the said C. D. for himself, his Executors and Administrators, doth Covenant and Grant to and with the said A. B. his Executors and Administrators, That he the said A. B. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, shall and may, from Time to Time, and at all Times, during the said Term hereby Granted, peaceably and quietly have, hold, occupy, possess and enjoy the said Messuage or Tenement and Premises last above mentioned, without the Let, Trouble, Hindrance, Molestation, Interruption or Denial of him the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, and every of the n, and of all and every other Person and Persons whatsoever claiming in, by, from or under him, them, or any of them. In Witness, &c.

A Lease of a House,

This Indenture made the 12 Day of August, Anno Domini 1717, being the First Year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord George II^d King of Great Britain, &c, by and between A. B. of &c. on the one part, And C. D. of &c. on the other part, *Witnesseth*, That the said A. B. for and in consideration of the yearly Rent, Covenants, Conditions and Agreements herein after contained, on the part and behalf of the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, *Have demised*, granted, and to Farm letten, and by these Presents doth demise, grant and to farm let unto the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns all that Farm or Plantation, with the Houses, out-Houses, Barns, Stables, Orchards, Gardens, Meadows, Pastures, Ground, Advantages, Ways, Easements, Emoluments, or Profits arising, belonging or appertaining to the hereby demised Premises, or any part thereof situate standing and being in - - - - - *Do have and to hold* all and singular the hereby demised Premises unto the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns from the - - - - - Day of - - - - - for and during the Term of - - - - - years to be fully compleat and ended. *Yielding and Paying* therefore yearly and every year the yearly

A Letter of Attorney.

153

Rent or Sum of - - - - current Money of - - - - to be paid Quarterly in four equal payments. And it is further Covenanted by and between the said Parties, That, &c. And the said A. B. for himself, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators and Assigns, and for every of them, doth Covenant, Promise, grant and agree to and with the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, and to and with every of them by these Presents, That he the said C. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns and every of them, for and under the yearly Rent, Covenants, Clauses and Conditions herein before expressed, on the part and behalf of the said C. D. his Executors and Assigns to be paid and performed, as aforesaid, shall and may peaceably have, hold, use, occupy and enjoy all and singular the hereby demised Premises and every part thereof, without any Let, Trouble, Molestation, eviction, ejection, interruption or denial of the said A. B. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, or of any other Person or Persons whatsoever, claiming, or that shall or may claim by, from or under him, them, or any of them. In Witness whereof the said parties to these Presents interchangeably have put their Hands and Seals the Day and Year first above written.

Sealed and Delivered, &c.

A Letter of Attorney,

KNOW all Men by these Presents, That I *John Vexall* of the City of *Trubill* in the Province of - - - Merchant, have Made, Ordained, Constituted, and by these Presents do Make, Ordain and Constitute, and in my place and stead put and depute my trusty and loving Friend *William Truman* of *Bridge Town* in the Island of *Barbadoes*, Merchant, my true and lawful, Attorney, for me, and in my Name and for my use to ask, demand, sue for, levy recover and receive all such Sum and Sums of Money, Debts, Goods, Wares, Dues, Accompts, and other Demands whatsoever, which are or shall be due, owing, payable and belonging to me, or detained from me any manner of ways or means whatsoever, by
X any

Letter of Attorney.

any Person or Persons whatsoever, in the said Island of Barbadoes. Giving and Granting unto my said Attorney or these Presents my full and whole Power, Strength and Authority, in and about the Premises, to have, use, and take all lawful ways and means in my Name, for the Recovery thereof. And upon the Receipt of any such Debts, or Sums of Money aforesaid, Acquittances, or other sufficient Discharges for me and in my name to Make, Seal and Deliver. And generally, all and every other Act and Acts, Thing and Things, Device and Devices in the Law whatsoever needfull and necessary to be done in the Premises, for the Recovery of all or any such Debts or Sums of Money aforesaid, for me, and in my Name to do, execute and perform, as fully, largely and amply, to all intents & purposes, as if I myself was personally present, or as if the matter required more special Authority than is herein given. And Attorney, or one or more under him, for the purposes aforesaid, to make and constitute, and again at pleasure to Revoke, Ratifying, allowing and holding for firm & effectual all and whatsoever my said Attorney shall lawfully do in and about the Premises, by virtue hereof. *In Witness* whereof I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal this 2d day of May, 1727.

John Vane

Sealed and Delivered, &c.

A Letter of Attorney to Receive Rents.

KNOW all Men, &c, That I A. B. of, &c. have Made, Ordained, Constituted and Appointed; And by these Presents do make, ordain, constitute and appoint C. D. of--- my True and Lawful Attorney, for me, and in my Name, and for my own proper Use and Benefit, to Ask, Demand and Receive of and from - - - all such Rents, and arrearages of Rents, which now are, or hereafter shall grow due from the said F. F. out of and from all that my Messuage or Tenement at G. And upon Receipt thereof to give Acquittances or other sufficient Discharges therefore. And in Default of Payment thereof, or any part thereof, to my said Attorney, I Do hereby Authorize and Impower him my said Attorney,

Wit

and upon the Land: and Premisses, to Enter and Distrain: and the Distress and Distrainments there found and taken to Dispose of according to Law, for the speedy Recovering and Obtaining of my said Rents and Arrears of Rent: Or, otherwise to proceed by Action of Debt for Recovery thereof, as to him my said Attorney shall be thought fit. Hereby Ratifying, &c. In Witness, &c.

The Form of Revoking a Letter of Attorney.

K Now All Men by these Presents, That whereas I H. K. upon Trust and Confidence Reposed in W. N. of - - - and by my Letter of Attorney, bearing Date the - - - Day of - - - Constituted and appointed the said W. N. my true and lawful Attorney, and did give and grant to him my full Power and Authority, for me and in my Name to Ask, Demand, Sue for, Recover and Receive, &c. Now Know ye, That for divers good Reasons to me best known, I the said H. K. have Revoked, Countermanded, and by these Presents do Revoke, Countermand and make Void the said Letter of Attorney so granted, and all the Power and Authority so given to the said W. N. by the aforesaid Letter of Attorney, or by any other ways or means whatsoever, whereby he can or may pretend to any Order, Power or Authority to do, deal, act or intermeddle for me, or in my Name, touching or relating to any thing that of right and claim appertaineth to me. In Witness, &c.

The Form of an Indenture of an Apprentice.

T His Indenture Witnesseth, That T. M. Son of J. W. late of the City of Bristol, hath put himself, and by these Presents doth voluntarily, and of his own free Will and Accord, put himself Apprentice to W. T. Citizen and Grocer of London, to learn his Art, Trade or Mystery, and after the manner of and Apprentices, to serve him from the Day of the Date hereof, for and during the Term of seven Years next ensuing; during all which Term the said Apprentice has said Master secretly and all secret his Secrets keep, his Lawful

Commands gladly every where obey, he shall do no damage to his said Master, nor see it to be done by others, without letting or giving notice thereof to his said Masters. He shall not waste his said Masters Goods, nor lend them unlawfully to any. He shall not commit Fornication, nor contract Matrimony within the said Term. At Cards, Dice, or any other unlawful Game, he shall not play, whereby his said Master may have Damage. With his own Goods, not the Goods of others, without Lisence from his said Master, he shall neither buy nor sell. He shall not absent himself Day nor Night from his Masters Service, without his Leave: Nor haunt Ale-houses, Taverens, or Play-houses; nor in all things behave himself as a faithful Apprentice ought to do, during the said Term. And the said Master shall use the utmost of his endeavour to Teach, or cause to be Taught or Instructed, the said Apprentice, in the Trade or Mystery he now followeth: and procure and provide for him sufficient Meat, Drink, Apparel, Lodging and Washing, fitting for an Apprentice, during the said Term. And for the true Performance of all and every the said Covenants and Agreements, either of the said Parties bind themselves unto the other by these Presents. *In Witnesses* whereof, they have interchangeably put their Hands and Seals this Twentieth Day of May.

N. B. *In this case there must be a pair of Indentures, one of them to be signed by the Servant, and delivered as his Act and Deed to the use of the Master; and the other signed by the Master, and delivered in like Manner to the Servant.*

A Copy of a Letter of License, usually granted, allowing time and safe Conants to a Debtor incapable of making present Payments.

TO All to whom these Presents shall come, we whose Names are under subscribed and annexed, Creditors of H. B. Citizen and Grocer of London, send Greeting. Whereas the said H. B. doth now stand indebted unto his Creditors, in divers Sums of Money which we are truly sensible

he is not at present able to pay: And we the said Creditors, and each of us respectively, being very well satisfied of the good intent and meaning of the said *H. B.* which he hath to pay us our said several Debts. Now know ye, that we the said Creditors and every one of us, for the Considerations aforesaid, have given and granted, and by these Presents do give and grant unto the said *H. B.* our full and free License, Liberty and Conduct as is in us, to go, come, pass and repass about his Business and Occasions, for and during the Term and Space of Two whole Years from the date hereof, without Let, Suit, Trouble or Molestation of us his said Creditors, or any of us, our, or any of our Heirs, Executors, Administrators or Assigns, or any of our Suit or Suits; and if it shall so happen that the said *H. B.* at any Time during the said Term of two full Years, to commence from the Date hereof, shall by us his said Creditors or any of us, our, or any of our Heirs, Executors, Administrators or Assigns, or by any Person or Persons, by, or through the Commandment, Will, Consent or Knowledge of us, or any of us or them, contrary to the tenor and true meaning of these Presents, be and ways Arrested, Sued or Molested in his Person or Goods, and be not thereof forthwith discharged and defended, that then the said *H. B.* his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, shall, by virtue of these Presents, be forever clearly acquitted and discharged against him or them, his or their Executors, or Administrators, by what means or consent the said *H. B.* shall, contrary to the true intent and meaning of this our present Writing of safe Conduct, be vexed, sued, arrested, attached or hindered as aforesaid, and thereof not forthwith discharged and defended as aforesaid, and that it shall and may be Lawful for the said *H. B.* to Plead and give in Evidence this our present Writing of safe Conduct, as in full bar and discharge of the Debt and Debts of such Person or Persons by whom the said *H. B.* shall be so Arrested, Sued or Molested as aforesaid. In Witness whereof, we the said Creditors of the said *H. B.* have hereunto set our Hands and Seals the 28 Day of May. 1727.

Scaled and Delivered. &c.

A Condition that the Heir shall make no Claim.

THE Condition, &c. That whereas R. G. of, &c. Father of the above bound R. is possessor of one Messuage or Tenement, and certain Lands thereunto belonging, called or known by the name of &c. now in the occupation of &c. and whereas the said R. the Son, for and in consideration of a certain competent Sum of &c. to him the said R. by the said J. well and truly consented and paid, whereof and wherewith the said R. acknowledgeth himself fully satisfied, hath granted and agreed that the said J. G. by and with the consent of the said R. the Father, shall have and enjoy to his own use forever, the said Messuage or Tenement, Lands and Premises, and all the Estate, Right, Title and Interest, which the said R. the Son now hath or any time hereafter may, might, should or ought to have, of, in and to the same from by or under the right, Title or interest of the said R. the Father, or as Heir unto him, and therefore the said R. the Son, his, &c. nor any of them, do nor at any time hereafter make or cause to be made any claim or demand, of, in or to the said Messuage or Tenement and Premises or any part thereof from and after the Decease of the said Father, but to permit and suffer the said J. G. his, &c. and every of them, to have, possess and enjoy, to his and their own use forever the said, &c. and every part thereof, without any let or disturbance of or by him the said R. the Son, his, &c. or of or by any other Person or Persons, or by his, their or any of their Acts, Means, Consents or Procurements, clearly released, acquitted and discharged of and from all Incumbrances whatsoever, by him, of any of them had, made committed or done, or to be had, made, committed or done, in any wise, that then, &c.

A Release to be given by a Ward to his Guardian when he comes at Age, if he has truly discharged his Trust, and rendered a justful Account.

To all Christian People to whom these Presents shall come,
I, R. G. of ——— in the County of ——— send
Greeting

Greeting, Know ye, That I the said, *T. M.* for sundry good Causes and Considerations me thereunto moving, have Remitted, Released, and for ever quit Claim unto *G. L.* of --- Gent, his Heirs, Executors and Administrators, all and all manner of Action and Actions, Suits, Debts, Duties, Reckonings, Accompts and Demands whatsoever, which I the said *T. M.* had, have or at any time hereafter may or shall have against the said *G. L.* his Heirs, Executors or Administrators, for and in, touching and concerning any the Reats received, Profit or Profits of any of the Lands, Tenements, Hereditaments, or any thing or Things appertaining, or by right belonging to me the said *T. M.* whether it be touching or concerning the Premises, or any of them, or any other matter, Cause or thing whatsoever, made, committed or done, or for any Receipts or Payments, of or touching the said Premises, Debt or Debts due to me by Bond, Bill, or otherwise, and for any thing or things whatsoever done or committed on my behalf, or tending to any matter or thing wherein I the said *T. M.* or at any time since until the Day of the Date of these Presents. In Witness whereof, I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal, the 23 Day of May, &c.

Sealed and Delivered &c.

The Form of a General Release.

Now all Men by these Presents, That *J. W.* of *G.* in the County of *M.* Merchant, have Remitted, Released, and forever quit claimed, and by these Presents do for me, my Heirs, Executors and Administrators Remise, Release, and forever absolutely quit claim unto *T. B.* of the City of *C.* in the County aforesaid, Merchant, his Heirs, Executors and Administrators, all and all manner of Actions, Suits, Bills, Bonds, Writings Obligatory, Debts, Dues, Duties, Accompts, Sum and Sums of Money, Judgments, Executions, Extents Quarrels, Controversies, Trepasss, Damages and Demands whatsoever, both in Law and Equity, or otherwise howsoever, which against the said *T. B.* I ever had, have, or which I, my Heirs, Executors or Administrators

tors

tors shall or may have, claim, challenge or demand, for or by reason of any matter, cause or thing from the beginning of the World unto the Day of the Date of these Presents, *In Witness* whereof, I have hereunto put my Hand & Seal this 4th Day of May, &c.

Sealed and Delivered &c.

A Copy of a Will

IN the Name of God *Amen*. The tenth Day of May in the Year of our Lord, 1727. I *E. M.* of S. in the County of L. Gentleman, being very sick and weak in Body, but of perfect Mind and Memory, Thanks be given unto God therefore, calling unto Mind the Mortality of my Body, and knowing that it is appointed for all Men once to dye, do make and ordain this my Last Will and Testament: That is to say principally, and first of all, I give and recommend my Soul into the Hands of God that gave it; and for my Body, I recommend it to the Earth, to be buried in a Christian like and decent manner, at the discretion of my Executors, nothing doubting but at the General Resurrection, I shall receive the same again by the mighty Power of God. And as touching such worldly Estate wherewith it hath pleased God to bless me in this Life, I give, devise and dispose of the same in the Following manner and form.

Imprimis, It is my Will, and I do Order, That in the first place, all my just Debts and Funeral Charges be paid and satisfied.

Item, I give and bequeath unto *Mary* my dearly beloved Wife the Sum of Two Hundred Pounds, of good and lawful Monies, to be raised and levied out of my Estate together with all my Household Goods and Moveables.

Item, I give to my well beloved Son, *R. M.* whom I likewise constitute, make and ordain my only and sole Executor of this my Last Will and Testament, all and Singular the Lands, Messuages and Tenements, to him, his Heirs and Assigns forever. And I do hereby utterly disallow, revoke and disannul all and every other former Testaments, Wills, Legacies and Executors, by me in any ways before this time

Named,

Named, Willed and Bequeathed. Ratifying and Confirming this, and no other, to be my Last Will and Testament. In Witness whereof, I have hereunto set my Hand and Seal, the Day and Year above-written.

Signed, Sealed, Published, Pronounced, and declared by the said - - - - as his Last Will and Testament, in the Presence of us the Subscribers, viz.

Note, That if any Legacies, or particular Sum or Sums of Money, Goods, Chattles, &c. be given; they must be mentioned as the Names of those they are given to; and that, at this Day, Three Witnesses are required, not any of them being included by Name in the Substance of the Will, as a Party concerned therein; for if so, the included Party is not held to be a legal Witness: And because, in case of Wills, many Controversies have arose, which have proved tedious and chargeable, I think it not amiss to cite the Opinions of the Learned in this kind, touching some things very necessary to be known.

Rules worthy of Observation in Matters relating to Wills and Testaments, &c.

IF any Person Seized in Fee, makes a Feoffment declaring his Will, upon the livery of it unto a Stranger, to be, That the Feoffor shall stand Seized to the use of the Feoffee, during Life, the Remainder to C. in Fee. In this case it is held, That the Feoffor cannot alter this Will by his last Will, so as in the said Last Will he doth frustrate to former Will; because, say they, the Use is in him, in the remainder upon the Livery; and it is in his Power to sell or dispose of it. But it is otherwise if the uses were declared to be the right Heirs of the Body of the Feoffor; for if so, it may be in his Power to alter his Last Will and Testament.

If a Testament bear date a *Paris* in *France*, it may be proved by the Executors in *England*, and it is a sufficient ground for the Executor to bring an Action for the Recovery of the Testator's Debts contracted in *England*. But on the contrary,

OBSERVATIONS ON A WILL.

If an Obligation bear date in Paris, then it is not sufficient ground an Action upon in our Courts.

It is further held, that if Land be given to a Man *sempiternally* by Will, that he hath but a Fee thereby, and some think that he hath but a Freehold during Life, and no more. But if it be given to Him and his Alligies, then he hath a Fee simple.

If it so happen that any one Will not satisfy the Testator, shall be at the Age of 21 Years, and it happens that he comes to that age, yet it is held that any Land or Tenement given by a Man gives Land and Tenements to his Heirs, and if he so falls out that he dies before his Testator, then his Heirs and his Heirs cannot, by virtue of that Will, receive the same, nor is the Court willing that makes for the truth of these in *part 7. fol. 228. Plowd. fol. 250. Dyer fol. 59. Plowd. fol. 313. Godolph. part 3. fol. 34.*

It is also a Man has a Term of years in Lands or Tenements, and the Right thereof be in his Disposal, and he, during the said Term, grants it to a stranger, and dies; it is held, that the Heir cannot make no Recovery of the remaining Term of Years, *Paken. Trin. Devises, fol. 107.*

A Will, in its common Acceptation, is the Declaration of a Mans Mind and Intent (concerning the Disposition of his Lands and Goods) of what he would have done after his Death. The Common Law call that a Will, when Lands or Tenements are devised; and when it concerns Chattles only, it is called a Testament. Where Lands are given by a Will, it is called a Devise, and where Goods or Chattles are disposed of, it is called a Legacy.

By the Stat. 32 Hen. 8. Wills were Ordained, and by 29 Car. 2. for Prevention of Frauds, all Devises of Lands or Tenements are to be in Writing, signed by the Devisor, or some one by his express Direction, in the Presence of Three Credible Witnesses: And no Devise in Writing shall be Revoked, but by some other Will or Writing, or by Cancelling the same by the Testator himself, or by his Directions, &c. If Goods, Chattles, Personal Estate, &c. are given of above the value of 50*l.* by word of Mouth, without Writing, (which the Law calls a Noncupative Will) the same must be likewise done in the Pre-

sence

Presence of Three Witnesses, bid to bear Witness by the Testator in his last Sickness, &c. And it must be Proved within six Months.

Words in Will ought to have a favourable Construction; and the Intent of Wills must be governed by the Words.

A Man can make but One Will that shall take Effect, and that is the Last, but he may make as many Codicils as he pleases.

In the well making of a Will, Four things ought to be Observed, 1. That it be done when the Testator is in Perfect Memory. 2. That there be Three, at least, Credible Witnesses to the Signing, Sealing and Publication thereof, who must set their Hands as Witnesses thereto. 3. If a Will contain more Sheets than One, the Testator ought to Sign and Seal every Sheet in Presence of the said Witnesses. And lastly, Where Lands or Tenements are Devised, let the word [Heirs] not be omitted. if it be omitted, it is an Estate only for Life.

A Codicil to a Will.

I A. B. of the City of, &c. do this, --- day of --- make and publish this my *Codicil* to my Last Will and Testament, in manner following, (that is to say) I give to my Brother H. E. the Sum of Fifty Pounds, to be paid to him within --- Months after my Decease. I give to --- my grey Horse which I used to ride, with my best Saddle and bridle. I give and bequeath --- the Sum of --- And whereas in and by my last Will, I have given to --- the Sum of --- I do hereby Order and Declare, That my Will is, That only the Sum of --- be paid to the said --- by my Executors, instead of the said Legacy of --- Pounds, so given by my said Will, as aforesaid. And, *Lastly*, It is my Desire, That this present *Codicil* be annexed to, and made part of my Last Will and Testament, to all Intents and Purposes. In Witness whereof I have hereunto put my Hand and Seal, &c. A. B.

Signed, Sealed and Published by the said A. B.

as a Codicil to be annexed to his Will, in the Presence of T. D. E. G. H. K.

The form of an Administrators Account.

THe Accompt of L. R. &c, Administrator of all and singular the Goods and Chattels of T. M. of C. deceased, as well of and for such and so much of the same Goods and Chattels as came to his Hands, as of and for his Payments and Disbursements out of the same, as followeth, viz.

The said Accomptant chargeth himself with all and singular the Goods and Chattels of the said deceased, specified in an Inventory thereof made and Exhibited into the Registry of the Prerogative Court of the Province of New York, amounting as by the said Inventory appears, to the sum of -----

Inprimis, the said Accomptant desireth allowance of the several Charges of the said Deceased, amounting one way or other, as this accomptant hath them in particulars, to the Sum of -----

Item, He desireth allowance of certain Debts inventoried, that prove insolvent, amounting to -----

Item, This Accomptant desireth allowance of certain Debts due by the said Deceased, at his Death, which this Accomptant hath since paid and discharged, that is, to pay and discharge as followeth, viz.

To William Receiver

26 02 9

To Edward Talers,

09 00 2

A Covenant to pass Money lent upon Bottomry.

TO all People to whom this present Writing shall come, J. Reed, Mariner (under God) Commander of the good Sloop called the *Fortune*, of Philadelphia, now riding at an Anchor in the River of Delaware, sends Greeting: Whereas the said Sloop is now bound upon a Voyage unto the Island of Barbadoes and else where, and back again to the Port of Philadelphia, And Whereas, Edward Denbam of, &c. Merchant, at the request and desire of the said J. R. hath the Day of the Date hereof lent and paid unto him the said J. the Sum of

of, &c. Lawful Money of Philadelphia, the receipt whereof the said J. doth hereby acknowledge, and hereof and of every part and parcel thereof, doth clearly acquit, exonerate and discharge the said E. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns forever by these Presents. Which Sum of, &c. for the allowance and considerations hereafter mentioned by the said E. D. is contracted to adventure to and with the said J. R. and to stand to and bear the dangers and casualties of the Seas, concerning the same, as hereunder is declared. Now know ye, That the said J. R. for him, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators and Assigns, doth covenant, promise and grant to and with the said E. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns by these Presents, That he the said J. R. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, shall and will well and truly pay or cause to be paid unto the said E. D. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns the Sum of &c. of Lawful Money of Philadelphia, within the Time and space of Twenty Days next after the - - - - - safe arrival into the River D. within the Port of the City of Philadelphia, of the said Sloop from her aforesaid intended Voyage, or within the like time and space of 20 Days next after the safe arrival from the Island of Barbados aforesaid into the River of D. into the Port of Philadelphia, or any other Sloop and Vessel, wherein the Account and Return of the Proceeds of the Sale of the said Sloop the Fortune in the Island of Barbados aforesaid, in case she shall be there sold, or wherein the Proceeds or Returns of the said Adventure of the said E. D. shall be returned and sent. And the said J. R. for him, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators and Assigns, doth further Covenant, Promise and Agree to and with the said E. D. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, by these Presents, That if the said Sloop F. shall be and remain on her said intended Voyage longer than - - - Months from the Day of the Date hereof to be reckoned and accounted, Then he the said J. R. his Heirs, Executors and Administrators shall and will well and truly pay, or cause to be paid unto the said E. D. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns the Sum of - - - current Money of - - - per Month, for each and every several and respective Month that the said Sloop shall be and remain on the said Voyage longer than

Charter Party of Affreightment.

than the said time and space of - - - (not exceeding in the said Voyage in the whole - - -) from the day of the Date hereof to be accomplished, together with the said Sum of - - - within the like time and space of 20 days next after the first Return and safe Arrival of the said Sloop into the River of D. from her said Intended Voyage, or within the like time and space of 20 days next after the safe Arrival from the Island of Barbados aforesaid into the River of D. within the said Port of Philadelphia, of any other Sloop or Vessel wherein the said - - - aforesaid. (A Covenant that the Sloop shall return from her Voyage within - - - to be accomplished, and then the Money to be paid,) I - - - &c.

A Charter-party of Affreightment.

THis Charter-party of Affreightment indented, made and agreed upon the Twenty first Day of August, Anno Domini 1717. and in the First Year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lord George King of England, &c. between H. H. of D. Merchant, Master (under God) of the good Sloop or Vessel called the F. of the Burthen of - - - Tuns or thereabouts, now riding at Anchor in the Port of Philadelphia, of the one part, and G. G. of New-York in the Province of N. F. Merchant, of the other part, Witnesseth, That the said Master hath granted and let to Freight the said Vessel unto the said Merchant; and the said Merchant hath hired the said Vessel for a Voyage with her to be made in manner and from following: That is to say, The said H. H. for himself, his Executors and Administrators doth Covenant, Promise and Grant to and with the said G. G. his Executors and Administrators by these Presents, That the said Vessel with the first fair Wind that God shall send after the Twentieth Day of May next ensuing the Date above, shall depart from the said Port of Philadelphia with such a useful Goods and Merchandizes as shall please the said G. G. or his Assigns in the meantime to be on Board her. And that it shall be lawful to and for the said G. G. his Factors and Assigns in the mean time to be on Board here all such lawful Goods and Merchandizes

or they shall think fit, which she may reasonable carry
 over and above her Victuals, Tackel and Apparel. And that
 the said Vessel shall, by God's Grace, directly, as Wind and
 Weather will serve, sail unto the Island of *B.* and there Deliver
 unto the said G. G. his Executors, Administrators, Factors
 and Assigns, all such Goods and Merchandizes as shall be laden
 on Board of her by the said G. G. his Executors, Admini-
 strators, Factors or Assigns, dry and well conditioned, Dan-
 ger of the Sea, Fire, Enemies, and Embargo of Princes only
 excepted. And after here clearing and right discharge of such
 Goods as she shall receive into her within the said Port of
Philadelphia, shall receive in the said Island of *B.* her full
 Lading in such lawful Goods and Merchandizes as it shall
 please the said G. G. his Executors, Administrators, Factors
 or Assigns, to Lade or cause to be Laden aboard her; and after
 such her full Lading at the Island of *B.* aforesaid, shall directly
 sail as Wind and Weather will permit to the said Port or Har-
 bour of *P.* aforesaid, and there deliver to the said G. G. his
 Executors, Administrators, Factors or Assigns, within the
 space of Ten Working Days hereafter mentioned, the said
 Goods and Merchandizes so received into her at *B.* aforesaid,
 dry and well conditioned, and make a right Discharge and
 End of the said Voyage, the Danger of the Sea, Fire, Eni-
 mies, and Embargo of Princes and Rulers only excepted:
 And that the said Vessel, after her arrival at *B.* aforesaid, shall
 stay at Anchor therefor her Unloading and Relading fifty Work-
 ing Days, and shall stay at Anchor at the said Port of *P.* after
 her Return again and Arrival there from *B.* aforesaid, Ten
 Working Days, for the Delivery of the said Goods so to be
 Laden aboard her at *B.* aforesaid; and the said G. G. for
 himself, his Executors, and Administrators, doth further
 Covenant, Promise and Grant to and with the said H. H. his
 Executors and Administrators, and also Warrant by these
 Presents, the said Vessel at her Departure from the said Port
 of *P.* and during the said Voyage, shall be strong & staunch,
 and sufficiently Victualled, Tackled and Apparelled, and fur-
 nished with Masts Sails, Sail-Yards, Anchors, Cables,
 Ropes, Cords, Tackle, Apparel, Boat and all other Furniture
 whatsoever requisite or needful for such a Vessel for such
 Voyage.

Voyage. And the said G. G. for himself, his Executors and Administrators, doth Covenant and Grant to and with the said H. H. his Executors and Administrators, not only to unlade and Relade and dispatch away the said Vessel at and from *Bar.* and *Phil.* aforesaid, within the Time and Tymes before limited and agreed upon, but also for the Freight or Hire of the said Sloop or Vessel for all the said Voyage, viz. from *P.* to the Island of *B.* and from thence to *P.* well and truly pay or cause to be paid unto the said H. H. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, the Sum of - - - Pounds current Money of *P.* in manner and form following, *that is to say*, The Sum of - - - at the Island of *Bar.* within 20 days next after the arrival of the said Sloop or Vessel and delivery of the said Goods well conditioned at the said Island of *Bar.* aforesaid; and the Sum of - - - Pounds more, the residue of the said - - - Pounds at *Phil.* aforesaid, within Ten Working Days after the return again and arrival of the said Sloop or Vessel from *Bar.* to *Phil.* and the Delivery of the said Goods to be received into her at *Bar.* aforesaid unto the said G. G. his Executors, Administrators, Factors or Assigns at *P.* aforesaid well conditioned as aforesaid; togesher with Primage and Average, according to the use and Custom of Merchants. And the said G. G. for himself, his Heirs Executors and Administrators, doth Covenant and Grant to and with the said H. H. his Executors and Administrators by these Presents, that in case the said Vessel shall through the default of the said G. G. his Factors or Assigns, stay for Unlading or Relading at *Bar.* aforesaid, or for her Lading at *P.* aforesaid, before her departure from thence; or for her Unlading at *P.* aforesaid, and after her return and arrival from *Bar.* aforesaid, to *P.* aforesaid, after the several Days therefore above-mentioned, That then the said G. G. his Executors or Administrators shall and will pay or cause to be paid unto the said H. H. his Executors or Administrators the Sum of - - - Shillings for every Working Day that the said Vessel shall either stay at *Bar.* for her Unlading and Relading, or at *P.* aforesaid, for her Lading and Unlading after the Days above limited and agreed upon. And to the Performance of all and singular the Covenants

Covenants and Agreements above-mentioned, which on the part and behalf of the said *H. H.* his Executors or Administrators, are to be performed in all things as above-said, the said *H. H.* bindeth himself, his Executors and Administrators, and especially the Sloop or Vessel aforesaid, with her Freight, unto the said *G. G.* his Executors and Administrators in the Sum or Penalty of Two Hundred Pounds of Lawful Money of *P.* well and truly to be paid by these Presents; and likewise for the performance of all and singular the Covenants and Agreements above-mentioned, which on the part and behalf of the said *G. G.* his Executors and Administrators, are and ought to be performed in all things as are above received, the said *G. G.* bindeth himself, his Executors and Administrators and Goods, unto the said *H. H.* his Executors and Administrators, in the Sum or Penalty of Two Hundred Pounds of like Money of *P.* well and truly to be paid by these Presents. In Witness whereof, the Parties first above-named to these Charter parties Indented, interchangeably have set their Hands and Seals, the Day and Year first above-written.

Sealed and Delivered, &c.

H. H.

Of Exchange.

Exchange of Money is of great Antiquity, and is esteemed exceeding: Convenient, excellently useful and beneficial, as well to Kingdoms and Cities in general, as to Merchants and others in particular: And as Money was first invented to be made of the best Metals, for the avoiding of chargeable and troublesome carriage, and transportation of Commodities from one Place to another in way of Trade: so was Exchange of Money first invented for the avoiding as well the danger, as the trouble and charge in the carriage of Money from Place to Place; and by reason that the Standards, Stamps, and Subscriptions of Moneys are found to be various and different (no Nation making use of others Coin) Merchants were forc'd for the better performance and carrying on this excellent Invention, to appoint a certain Exchange, by giving Value for Value, according to the Fineness or Courtness of the Coyns, with

ertain allowances to the Merchant Exchanging.

Seeing then that Exchanges are of such great use and importance, the Merchant ought to have great insight and knowledge in the Coyns of Foreign Countries, that he may be able to reduce one Coyn into the valuation of another, by raising or abating according to the Goodness or Badness of the Metal: that when he hath occasion to draw a Bill of Exchange upon one of 100 *l.* here at *London*, to be paid in *France*, *Holland*, or else where, he may know the Loss or Gain.

The true *Exchange* for Money by Bills of *Exchange*, is really grounded on the *Valuation*, *Fineness* and *Weights* of the *Money* of every Country according to the *Par*, that is, Value for Value; and on this are the Exchanges of *England* grounded.

Exchanges are made by Bills, when Money is delivered simply here in *England*, the Bills received for the same to have the Payment in some other Country beyond the Seas, for Goods here bought, or the like, at a certain Price agreed upon: The like is observed beyond the Seas, and the Money received here in *England*.

The meaning of a Bill of *Exchange*, in this to be understood: Suppose two Merchants have correspondence and dealing together, the one here in *England*, and the other in *France*, the Merchant in *France* having bought Goods of a Man, to the value of 500 or 1000 *l.* the Man being to come to *England*, comes to the Merchant for his Money, who being perhaps not provided, or otherwise the Man desirous to have his Money paid in *England*; the Merchant upon these or the like considerations, draws a Bill of *Exchange* for the said Sum upon his Correspondent here in *England* (who perhaps is indebted to him in greater Sums) to be Paid upon Sight, or within such a Time after Sight, either upon Usance, or double or treble Usance, as they agree. To be explain'd, that is two or three Months.

Again, sometimes Gentlemen or others having occasion to Travel beyond Seas, for their Convenience, Pay their Money to a Merchant here at *London*, desiring him to draw a Bill of *Exchange* for the same upon his Factor, or some Merchant with whom he hath Correspondence, at the Place where the Gen-
tle-

A Bill of Exchange.

171

men do design their Journey; which Bill is ordered to be Paid as aforesaid.

Forms of Bills of Exchange.

Philadelphia May 1, 1727.

AT Ten days after sight of this my only Bill, pray pay or cause to be paid to Mr. J. S. or to his Order the Sum of Twenty Pounds, current Money of - - - - - Make good Payment, and place the same to account of

Your Friend and Servant,

To Mr. Thomas Haveit, } David Long.
Merchant in New-York, }

When this Bill comes to hand you must go with it to J. S. and show it to him, and if he accepts to pay it, he must write under it, thus,

Accepted by me this 10th Day of June, 1727. J. Short.
Which Acceptance obliges J. S. to pay the said Bill Ten days after he so accepts it.

A Forreign Bill of Exchange.

New-York, April 6th 1727.

AT Thirty Days after sight of this my first Bill of Exchange, my Second and Third of the same Tenor and Date, not being paid, pay or cause to be paid to Mr. T. T. or to his order, the Sum of Fifty Pounds lawful Money of Great Britain for the value received here by me of Mr. - - - - - Make good payment, and place to account, as per Advice of

Your Humble Servant.

To Mr. Rich. Henesty, } John Sharp.
Haberdasher in London. }

A Protest of a Bill of Exchange,

When this Bill comes to Mr. Trader he has occasion to pay that Sum to another Man; and therefore without being at the trouble of receiving and paying said money, he endorses the said Bill, and gives it to the other Man to receive, which is thus. viz.

Pay the Contents of the within Bill for me to Thomas Gold,
or to his order, for value received of him, T. Trader.

But if Mr. Richard Hoxley refuses or neglects to pay the said Bill of Exchange, then you must go to the Notary Publick, and Protest the said Bill, which runs thus, viz.

The Protest of a Bill of Exchange.

Now All Persons whom this present Writing may concern, that the 22th Day of June, in the Year of Our Lord, 1727, at the Request of Mr. Thomas Trader, of London, Merchant, I ~~am~~ A. Publick Notary, Sworn and Authorized by Authority of his Sacred Majesty, did go to the Dwelling House or Habitation of Mr. R. H. upon whom the above named Bill of Exchange is drawn, and shewed the Original unto the said Mr. R. H. demanding his acceptance of the same; Who answered me, he should not accept the said Bill, for some Reasons he should write to Mr. J. S. the Drawer. Wherefore I the said Notary did Protest, and do by their Profane Protest, as well against the said J. S. the Drawer, as likewise against the said R. H. upon whom it is drawn, as also against all other Persons, Endorsers, or others therein concerned, for all Changes, Recharges, Damages and Interests, whatsoever; In Presence of C. R. and J. K. called for Witnesses. to this present Act done in my Office in London, the Day and Year above-mentioned.

R. A. Notary Publick.

A Bill of Sale for a Vessel.

TO All Christian People, To whom these Presents shall come. Know Ye, that J. A. of the City of Free Ship

A Declaration in Trust.

173

Right Sole Owner of the good Sloop or Vessel, called, *The Ann*, of the Burthen of Forty Tons, or thereabouts, For and in Consideration of the Sum of Two hundred Pennsylvanian Money of the Province of Pennsylvania to me in hand paid before the Enicaling and Delivery of these Presents, by R. S. of the City of Phil. *Marriner*, the Receipt whereof he hath hereby acknowledge and himself therewith fully Satisfied, Contented and Paid, hath Granted, Bargained and Sold, and by these Presents doth Grant, Bargain and Sell unto the said R. S. his Heirs, Executors and Assigns all that *Hull* of the said good Sloop or Vessel, called, *The Ann*, Together with Mast - - Boom, Bol-sprit - - and all other Necessaries thereto Appertaining and belonging, Unto the said R. S. his Heirs, Executors and Assigns, To the Sole and only proper use, benefit and behoof of him the said R. S. his Heirs, Executors and Assigns Forever. And the said J. L. doth covenant for himself his Heirs, Executors and Administrators, To and with the said R. S. his Heirs Executors and Assigns, To Warrant and Defend the said Sloop and all other the before-mentioned Appurtenances for and during the full Term and Space of one Year and a Day, according to the Laws and Customs of *Oleron* in such Cases made and provided [rate, Enemies, Restraint of Princes, Perils and Dangers of the Seas only excepted] In Testimony whereof the said J. L. hath hereunto set his Hand and Seal this 23^d Day of May in the First Year of his Majestys Reign *Annoq; Domini*. 1727.

A Declaration in Trust.

TO all People to whom this Present Writing shall come: I R. B. of, &c. Gent. send Greeting. Whereas J. B. of, &c. by Deed of Sale, or Writing under his Hand & Seal, bearing date the Day of, &c. being the day before the Date hereof, hath bargained, sold, Transferred, and set over unto me the said R. B. one equal 16th Part of the new Ship, or Vessel, called the, &c. of the Burthen of, &c. or thereabouts; now Riding at Anchor in the River of D. and also one Equal 16th Part of all and singular the Masts, Sails, Anchors, Cables, and

and Appurtenances whatsoever, to the said Ship or Vessel belonging, or in any wise appertaining, To have and so to hold. The said Equal 16th Part of the said Ship, and all other the Premises in, and by the said Deed of Sale mentioned, or intended to be granted, Transferred and set over, and every part thereof unto me the said R. B. my Executors, Administrators and Assigns forever, as by the said Writing or Deed of Sale more fully and largely appeareth. Now know ye, That I the said R. B. do here declare, That the said Writing, or Deed of Sale, of the Premises before mentioned, is made to me only in Trust to and for the only use benefit and behoof of the said J. B. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns. And that I the said R. B. paid no Money or other Consideration for the same; but that the same Equal 16th Part of the said Ship or Vessel and all other the Premises in and by the said Deed of Sale mentioned, to be to me granted are the proper Goods and Chances of the said J. B. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, for and notwithstanding the said Writing or Deed of Sale to be made as aforesaid, and are to be and remain to and for the only proper use, benefit and behoof of the said J. B. his Executors, Administrators and Assigns. And I the said R. B. do hereby deny and disclaim the having any Right, Title, Interest, Property, Claim or Demand of, in, or to the said Sixteenth Part of the said Ship or Vessel, and other the Premises in and by the said Writing or Deed of Sale to me granted as aforesaid, otherwise than in Trust as aforesaid, to and for the use, benefit and behoof of the said J. B. his Executors Administrators and Assigns as aforesaid. In Witness. &c.

A Defeazance on Lands forfeited.

This Indenture made, &c. Between J. P. of, &c. of the one Part, and H. C. of the other Part, Whereas the said J. P. by his Recognizance in the Nature of a Statute Book, bearing even date with these Presents, taken and acknowledged, before, &c. Lord Chief Justice of his Majesties Court of Kings Bench at Westminster is, and standeth bound

to the said H. C. in the Sum of, &c. And whereas the said J. P. together with A. C. of, &c. and T. C. of, &c. stand bound to H. C. in and by one Obligation bearing date with these Presents conditioned for the Payment of the Sum of, &c. being the same Sum intended to be secured by the said Recognizance on the, &c. day of, &c. next ensuing the date hereof, at or in the, &c. as in and by the said Recognizance or Statute Staple, and Obligations and Conditions thereof, may appear. Now this Indenture Witnesseth, and the said H. C. is contented and well pleased, and doth for himself, his Heirs Executors and Administrators, Covenant and Promise, That if the said J. P. his Heirs, Executors and Administrators, or any of them, shall and do well and truly pay or cause to be paid unto the said H. C. his Executors, Administrators or Assigns, the said Sum of, &c. on the said, &c. day of, &c. at or in the said, &c. According to the said Condition of the said Obligation, that then the said Recognizance or Statute, to be void and of none Effect, or else to remain and be in full force and virtue.

A brief Relation of the Kingdom of England

ENGLAND is bounded on the East by part of the German Ocean; on the West by St. George's Channel; on the North by Scotland; and on the South by the English Channel. The Air of this Country is mild, sweet and temperate, not Peircing Cold in Winter, nor Scorching in Summer. The longest Day in the Northmost Parts is about Seventeen Hours and half, the shortest in the Southmost is almost Eight Hours, and the Nights proportionably. The chief Commodities, are Corn, Cattle, Tin, Copper Lead, Iron, Timber, Coal, Wool, Cloth, Stuffs, Linnen, Hides, Tallow, Butter, Cheese and Beer, &c.

The

Relation of England.

The Rivers of this Country are (1) the abundance of Medicinal Waters; whether for bathing, as in *Wells* in *Wiltshire*; or Purgings particularly those of the Spawes in *Wells*; *Wells* in *Kent*, *Wells* and *Wells* in *Wiltshire*; *Wells* in *Northampton* and *Wells* in *Middlesex*. Here are also many other remarkable Springs, whereof some abound with Salt, as that of *Durham* in *Wiltshire*; or Sulphur, as the famous Well at *Wells* in *Wiltshire*; or Brimstone or Pesty matter, as that at *Fitchford* in *Wiltshire*. Others have a purifying quality, as particularly that near *Lancaster* & the remarkable dropping Well in the *Westriding* of *Yorkshire*. And Lastly, some Ebb and Flow, but that commonly in a very irregular manner, as those in *Wells* in *Derbyshire*, and *Wells* near *Wells*, whose Waters rise and fall several times in a Day. To these we may add that extraordinary Fountain near *Richard's* Castle in *Herefordshire*, commonly called *St. Mary's*, which is always full of small Boats, such as Frog or Fish, though frequently emptied and cleared of them.

Near *Wells* in *Wiltshire*, is a remarkable Well, which being covered, there presently breaks out a Sulphurous Vapour which makes the Water bubble up as if it bou'd, and a fire being put thereon, it instantly catches Fire, and burns like Brandy; during a Calm, the Flame will continue a whole Day, and by it's Heat they can Boil Eggs, Meat, &c. and yet the Water itself is Cold. (2) In *Wells* in *Westmoreland*, is the three Brother Tree, so call'd, because there were three of them (the least whereof is this) which, a good way from the Root, is Thirteen Yards and an half round. (3) In *Derbyshire* is the Famous Peak, and some hideous Caves, as those called *Pool's Hole*, *Eden Hole*, and one more, which is known by the indecent Name of the *Devil's Nose*. Near it is a Spring, remarkable for consisting of both Hot and Cold Water, so joined in the same Stream, that a Man may at once put his finger and Thumb of the same Hand in the hot and the cold in the Cold. Lastly, in the County of *Surrey* is the River *Wick*, which looketh itself under Ground, and ariseth again at some considerable Distance; as doth also *River*, in the Northriding of *Yorkshire*. The

The Kingdom of *England* is a Famous Ancient and Hereditary Monarchy: A Monarchy that affords very much to the Industry, Liberty and Happiness of the Subject, and reserves enough for the Majesty and Prerogative of the King, who is willing to own his People as Subjects, and not as Slaves. The Supreme Court of Judicature is the *High Court of Parliament*. The Interior Courts are the *King's Bench*, the Court of *Common Pleas*, the *High-Court of Chancery*, the *Exchequer*, and the Court of the *Duchy of Lancaster*; &c. As also the *Ecclesiastical-Courts* in Subordination to the Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*; besides these various Courts, the King, consulting the ease, safety and welfare of the Subject, administers Justice by his Judges, and that in their yearly *Circuits* thro' the Kingdom; and, for the better governing and keeping the Peace in particular Counties, Hundreds, Cities, Boroughs, and Villages, County's have their respective Lords Lieutenants, Sheriffs, and Justices of the Peace; Hundreds, their Bailiffs, High Constables, and Petty-Constables. Cities, their Mayor, Aldermen, Sheriffs, &c. Boroughs and Towns incorporate, have either a Mayor or two Bailiffs, or Port-reeve, who, in power, are the same with Mayor and Sheriffs, and during their Offices, are Justices of the Peace within their own Liberties. And lastly, Villages are in subjection to the Lord of the Manour, under whom is the Constable or Headborough to keep the Peace, apprehend Offenders, and bring them before the Justice.

Historians report That *Gomer*, the eldest Son of *Japheth* the Son of *Noah*, gave name to the *Gomerains*, who filled almost this part of the World; leading, as *Vilicbini* saith, in the tenth year of *Nimrod*, a Colony out of *Armenia* into *Italy*, which of *Gomer* were called *Cowbri*, and afterwards *Cimbri*; when such as departed from *Italy* went into the North parts, and gave it the Name of *Crimbrica*; or *Chersonesus*, from whence the *Britains* or *English* proceeded; who came over at first from the Continent of *France*. *England* was Anciently called *Cumbri*: these *Britains* as I may call them, were then as wild in many things as the *Indians* in *America* are now, as in Curings, Marking and Painting their Flesh, and in going Naked: Some of those *Indians* held that Souls departed, wand

ered up and down and fastened Hunger, Thirst and Cold; and Buried their Bodies, young Mear, and Gold and Silver with them in their Graves: But beived the Souls of good Men at in Glory.

Their Married Women were known by having on their Shoulders, Elbows and Knees, the Pictures of the Heads of Lyons, Griffins, and the like; on their Bellies the Sun with his Beams, and on their Paps the Moon and Stars.

The Virgins had on the shapes of divers flowers, made on them while Young, by tainting the Skin, and colouring it with the Juice of Herbs, which remained on them some Years.

The Men were ~~very~~ horrible to look on, having on their Flesh the Pictures of ugly Beasts, Serpents and the like.

Their Idols, to whom they Sacrificed Mens Flesh were almost in number equal to the Idols of the Egyptians.

The Men and Woman were swift of Foot, Warring with their Enemies in Waggon and Chariots, Armed at the end of the Axel-Trees with Hooks and Swores of Iron, which with the Rattling of their Chariot-Wheels Amazed their Enemies, Bringing all manner of Dainties, Fed upon Roots of Herbs, and Barks of Trees, not Tilling any Ground, nor sowing Corn, or sowing any seed in the Untilled Earth, and Harrowing it over with Bushes; Cattle, Fowl and Fish they had, but eat none of them.

Their Trading, for the most part, was among themselves, and that but mean; their chief Riches consisting (as Strabo saith) in Ivory Boxes, Sheers, Bits, Bridles, Chains of Iron, Wreaths, Glass coloured, and the like, which they usually delivered to each other as Current Coins for what their Necessaries required, Living in Huts, and going Naked, and sailing in Leather Boats, until the Romans taught them to build both Ships and Houses, &c.

This Land hath been Conquered five several times, First by the Romans, under Julius Cæsar, who made the first Attempt upon it Fifty one Years before the Birth of our Saviour Christ. He subjected it to the Roman Yoke, and caused them to become Tributary to the Romans, who often defended them from the Picts and Scots, who came out of Scotland, and robed and spoiled the Country; to prevent which Severus, one of the Ro-

man Emperors, caused a Wall to be made from Sea to Sea, between *England* and *Scotland*; that is, from *Eden* to *Fine*.

Divers of the Emperors were here in Person, as *Alexander* and *Severus*, who is reported to be buried at *York*, Anno 236. Here also was *Constantius*, Father to *Constantius* the Great, he from hence Married *Helena*, a Woman of this Land, who was afterwards Mother to the Renowned *Constantine* (from whom *Constantinople* had its name, the Chief City of the Great *Turk*).

But when the *Roman* Empire was much weakened, partly by their Own Discord, and partly by the Irruptions of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, and such like Invaders, the *Romans* were forced to recall their Soldiers from *Britain*, after they had Ruled 483 Years, and so leaving the Land Naked, the *Scotts*, and certain of the same Country, called *Picts*, did break in, who miserably wasted and spoiled *England*.

To relieve them from the Cruelty and Oppression of these *Scotts* and *Picts*, the *Saxons* were (in the third Place) by some of the Land called in, who finding the sweetness of the Soil, and the weakness of the Inhabitants, did repair hither by great Troops, and so seated themselves here, that there were at one time seven several Kingdoms of them in the Compass of *England*, commonly called the Heptarchy.

These *Saxons* did bear themselves with more Moderation, towards those few of the Country that remained, than the *Picts* had done: But they growing to Contention, one King with another, partly concerning the Bounds of their Territories, or Dominions, and partly concerning other Quarrels, they had many Battles each with the other.

Their Kingdoms were these, 1. The Kingdom of *Kent*, under the Succession of seventeen Kings, began by *Herbert*, Anno 455. and ended in *Baldred*, Anno 827.

2. The Kingdom of *South Saxons*, containing *Sussex* and *Seftex*, under the Succession of Five Kings, began by *Ella*, Anno 483. and ended in *Hutburn*, Anno 601.

3. The Kingdom of the *West Saxons*, containing *Cornwall*, *Devonshire*, *Dorsetshire*, *Somersetshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Hants*, *Bedfordshire*, under the Succession of 17 Kings, began by *Cerdic*, Anno 519. and ended by *Ighert*, Anno 880.

A Relation of England.

4. The Kingdom of *East Saxons*, containing, *Essex* and *Middlesex*, under the Succession of 16 Kings begun by *Ermenwin*, Anno 527. and ended in *Sutbred*, Anno 827.

5. The Kingdom of *Northumberland*, containing *Yorkshire*, *Durham*, *Lancashire*, *Westmoreland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland*; under the Succession of 23 Kings begun by *Ella* and *Ida*, Anno 547. and ended in *Osred*, Anno 926.

6. The Kingdom of *Mercia*, containing *Huntingdon*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Northampton*, *Leicester*, *Darbyshire*, *Nottinghamshire*, *Oxfordshire*, *Cheshire*, *Shropshire*, *Gloucestershire*, *Worcestershire*, *Staffordshire*, *Warwickshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Bedfordshire*, and *Hertfordshire*, under the Succession of 20 Kings, begun by *Creda*, Anno 522. and ended in *Burdred*, Anno 826.

7. The Kingdom of *East-Angles*, containing *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, and *Ely-Island*, under the Succession of 15 Kings, begun by *Uffa*, Anno 575 and ended in *Edmond*, Anno 914.

But in process of time, *Egbert* the 17 King of the *West-Saxons* and *Wessex*, became the Monarch of England, about the Year of Christ, 830.

And then the fourth, and most grievous Conquest and scourge of this Nation. was by the *Danes*, who made a violent Invasion, under King *Ethelred*, the *Saxon*; and so far prevailed, that he was constrained to pay them Yearly 10000 *l.* which they at last enhanced to 41000 *l.* This Tyranny *Ethelred* not able to endure, privately Commanded his Subjects to Massacre the *Danes*, which was Executed on the 11th of November at Night: upon which *Swain*, King of *Denmark*, came with a Navy of 250 Ships into *England*, drove *Ethelred* into *Normandy*, and Tyrannized over the *English* with a very high hand, every *English* house maintaining one *Dane*, whom they called *Lord*, who lived Idly, by the Labour of the *English*. And basely, when some of the *English* were Drinking, used to stab them, or cut their Throats; Therefore to avoid which Villany, the Party then Drinking, requested some of the next to him to be his Surety, or Pledge for his Life; from whence came the Expression used to this Day of Pledging one another, when the party Drank to, takes his turn, and Drinks next after him.

Now

Now the Cause being through Gods Mercy taken away, there's no need of concerning the Custom of tempting any to Drink more than good nature requires; but as it is now among the more sober English at Meals; what tho' they Drink no more another, desire no Pledges, but let the party (that wants Drink) call for it.

"**Foetid Health**: (*Said a worthy Man*) at great Feasts, is
in Barbarous Fashion (used by some Church Men.) An
Ill-Health Feels every Mans Rule was his own choice, and the
Liberty of very Pagans commended Liberty of their Cups,
(Macpherson's Countess p. 276.) But Health-Drinking is by
good Christians called the Shaming-Horn of Eriks. "These
Strong-Liquor Worshipers, (*said he*) will sometimes be on
their knees to Drink a great Mans Health [and so far Dis-
part from themselves] and so make Gods of others, and
Swine of themselves.

But the Feast our Saviour Christ approves of, you may see. Luke 16. 19. 26. *Inventing the Poor, &c.* that cannot be still again. But Bishop *Sanderfon* saith, viz. Temperance is the best *Physick*, Patience the best *Law*, and good Conscience the best *Divinity*.

After the Reign of three Kings the *English* were off the *Danish* Yoke, and the *Saxons* were Re-inthroned.

Note, That it is said of King *Edgar* that he Built above four
several Monasteries, and some other Kings were, in their
Ignorance, so devoted to the *Papists Superstition*, that they
reigned their Crowns, and *superstitiously* Traveled to *Rome*,
there to lead the Lives of Private Men.

Alfo *Cassius* the *Danish* King, being taught by some Men, that *St. Peter* had received from *Christ* the great Power of Finding and Loofing, and that he was alfo the Key-bearer of Heaven Gates, for which cause (left *St. Peter* the old not open the fame unto him, when he should come thither) he went on Pilgrimage to *Rome*.

The Fifth and last Conquest was by the Normans, under the leading of Duke William of Normandy, who pretending he had Right to the Crown of England, promise of Adoption, of some other compliance from King Harold, did with his Normans, *anno* 1066. in 896 ships arrive at Pevensey in Sussex, and

and obtained a great Victory *October the 14th* in which were slain *thirteen* of the *English*. *William* took upon him the Kingdom as Conqueror, for he seized all into his hands, gave out *Barons*, *Lords* and *Manors* from himself; erected the former *Laws* and *Custom*, and introduced here the *Manners* and *Orders* of his own Country, which have proceeded on, and been, by little and little, changed to this Day.

You may see, the *English* Blood, at this Day is a mixture of *Norman* and *Saxon*, not without a Tincture of *French* and *British* Blood.



OF AMERICA.

AMERICA may be properly called the *New-World*, as it was discovered by *Christopher Columbus* about 290 Years past. And tho' there have been several Conjectures that it was known in former Ages, yet they seem uncertain, and inconclusive, so that there is no Dependence upon any of them; and we may conclude, that *Columbus* gave the World the first Notice of this immense Country. He was a *Genoise* by Birth, and bred a *Mariner*, trading into *Syria*, and *Portugal*, from whence he had Opportunity to view the Coasts of *Africa*, and observing that at certain Seasons of the Year, the Winds blew long together from the West, and judging they came from some Place beyond the Sea, and that by the Motion of the Sun, there must be another World to which that glorious Planet did impart both its Heat and Light, he resolved to seek it. He was about 40 Years old, and in 1486, proposed his Designs to the State of *Genoa*, assuring them, That if they would furnish him with Ships, he did not doubt but to find a Way by the West, to the *Spice Islands* in the *Indies*, but they rejected it, as an idle Fancy. He made the same Offer with like success to *Alphonso* King of *Portugal*, upon which he sent his Brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* of *England*, who being unhappily taken by *Prince*

Prizes in his Voyage in England, he after long Imprisonment arrived in England, and repairing to Court, presented King Henry with a Map of the World with his Brother's Offer of Discovery: The Motion was readily entertained, and Christopher sent for into England, who hearing nothing from his Brother, he went to Spain, where he sped in his Suit, and arrived at the Court of Castile in 1446.; but Ferdinand, and Isabella, King and Queen of Spain, being in War with the Moors in Granada, he was neglected till the Arch-bishop of Toledo procured him Audience, and after the Wars were ended, he was furnished with three Ships at the King's Charge, and 16000 Duckets in Money, which seemed rather to be for Discovery, than a Conquest. In 1492, Columbus with about 120 Mariners sail'd for Gomera, one of the Canary Islands; where having refresh'd, after many Days, they encounter'd the Sea, called *Sargassa*, from a Plant like San-pire, appearing like a green Field; this Sight so discourag'd them, that it had occasioned their Return, had not the Sight of some Birds encourag'd them with Hopes of Land not far. After 33 Days sailing, despairing of Success, the Company mutinied, threatening to throw Columbus into the Sea, who being a Genoese Stranger, had deluded them; at length with soft Words, and strong Promises, he assur'd them, That if no Land appeared in three Days, he would return. The Time was just expiring when Columbus observed the Clouds to be clearer than before, and in the Evening of the last Day, one of the Company from the Main-mast descried Fire, and soon after the Land appeared: This Person expecting a great Reward from the King of Spain, of which he was frustrat'd upon his Return, in a Rage renounc'd Christianity, and turn'd Mahometan.

Upon Sight of Land, the next Day the Mariners, who were Yesterday for destroying him, now embrace, and almost adore him, for so happily bringing them to the Land of Promise. On Shore they go, and falling a Tree, erected a Cross, and took Possession of this New-World, in the Name of the Catholick King. They first landed in an Island called *Guahani*, one of the *Borgais*, which they named *St. Salvador*, and sail'd from thence to *Hispaviola*, where the Natives fled from

from the Sea to the Mountains, but seizing one Woman, they gave her Meat, Drink, and Clothes, and let her go, and declaring their Civility, they came in Troops to the Ships Side, judging the Spaniards to be some divine Nation from Heaven, tho' at first they thought them *Cannibals*, or Man-eaters, and so indeed they proved in some Sense, leaving in some Parts 200 *Indians* alive of 4 Millions, that inhabited those Countries. Nothing more pleased the Spaniards, than the Gold which the innocent Inhabitants exchanged for Bells, Glasses, Points and other Trifles.

Columbus built a Fort by Leave of the King of *Hispaniola*, leaving 38 Spaniards therein, and taking with him 6 *Indians*, returned to Spain, being highly caress'd by the King and Queen, and honour'd with the Title of Admiral, and enriched with the Tenth of the Spanish Gains in the Indies. He is then sent a second Time with his Brother *Bartholomew*, (who was made Vice-roy of *Hispaniola*,) with 17 Sail of Ships, and 1500 Men: When he arriv'd, he found all his Men murder'd by the *Indians*, who laid the Blame on their insolent Carriage towards them.

Columbus now built *Domingo*, *Isabella*, and *St. Thomas* Forts in that Island, where the Spaniards all died with Famine; for the *Indians* unwilling to have such Neighbours, refused to plant their *Maiz*, and *Jucca*, and so starved both themselves and their new Guests. He then discovered *Cuba*, *Jamaica*, and the adjacent Isles, and at length returning into Spain, died in 1506, and was buried at *Sevil*, leaving 2 Sons; the Eldest named *Diego*, succeeding him in the Admiralty of the Indies.

Columbus having led the Way, was seconded by *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine*, employed by *Emanuel*, King of *Portugal* in 1502, who had been his Companion in the first Expedition. He with a competent Number of Ships & Men, sailed in the Equinoctial, and discovered the Coasts of *Guiana*, & *Brazil*, beyond the Tropick of *Cancer*, to 32 Degrees of South Latitude, and the Height of the Streights of *Magellane*. (as they were afterwards called). The *Americus* meeting with foul Weather, was forced to return home by the Coast of *Africa*. The next Year he design'd a Voyage to *Isle de*
P:41

And in *Brasil*, but his Provisions being lost upon the Coast of *Guinea* in *Africa*, he was forced to return, but how long he lived after, is not Recorded; yet he had the Honour and Happiness, (to the great Injury of *Columbus*) to give his Name to the fourth Part of the World, which from him was called *America*.

Ferdinand's *Cortez*, was another great Adventurer, who went Clerk to the Treasurer of *Cuba*, where getting Money by carrying over Sheep and Kine, and receiving Gold in exchange, he returned to *Spain*, and furnishing himself with 11 Ships, and 550 Men, he arrived at *St. Cruz*, and discovering many new Provinces, he sailed up the River *Tahasco*, where the People of *Panama* refusing to sell him Provisions, he plundered the same. The Indians enraged, raised an Army of 40000 Men, but *Cortez* with Horse and Cannon soon defeated them, they imagining the Horse and Man to be but one Creature. He proceeded then toward *Mexico*, and at *St. John de Ulla*, the Governor came to him with 1400 Indians, adorning and burning Frakincense in him, and presented him with Victuals, Jewels, Gold and Silver, which *Cortez* requited with a Collar of Glass, and other Things of small Value: *Cortez* asked the Governour whether their great Emperor *Montezuma* had any Gold, who answering, Yea; I am glad of that, said *Cortez*, for my Companions are troubled with a Disease at the Heart, for which Gold was the only sovereign Remedy; so desired him to furnish him with the greatest Quantity he could of that Metal, who accordingly sent two Wheels, each two Yards broad, one of Silver, representing the Moon, the other of Gold like the Sun, to the Value of 25000 Duckets; he likewise promised to pay whatever Tribute the King of *Spain* should require, and all Necessaries, but was unwilling that *Cortez* should visit him, which yet he resolved he would; being arrived at *Mexico*, he received him with all Solemnity. But *Cortez* being full of ambitious Thoughts, seized upon the King, and put him in Chains, with a small Guard of 80 Men; whereupon *Montezuma's* Nephew fled to Arms, but by the Treachery of his own People, was delivered to his Uncle, whom *Cortez* permitted to exercise a seeming royal Authority, and by whose Order he summoned an Assembly of

OF AMERICA,

Chief of his People, where he obliged him to make an Oration, declaring, 'That his Predecessors were not born in this Country, but came from a strange Land, and that their Kings of old had promised to send such as should rule them, and had accordingly sent these *Spaniards*, and that they ought to submit to the Emperor of *Spain*, : Which they did, tho' with many Tears on either Side, for the Loss of their Liberty. He then presented *Cortez* with a vast Sum of Gold and Jewels, in the Nature of a Tribute valued at one Million six hundred Thousand *Castilians*: After this one of *Cortez's* Captains, (who was gone upon an Expedition) resolved to make the *Spaniards* terrible to the *Indians*: It happened the Nobility and Commons of the City used all Kind of Sports and *Recreations*, to divert their Captive King, among which were above 2000 Youths, the Flower of the City, whom he fell upon with a Party of 100 *Spaniards*, and cut them all off. The *Indians* beholding this Cruelty & Injustice, now by all the Arms, whereupon this Villian threw a Dagger to *Montezuma's* Breast, threatened to kill him, unless he would look out of the Window, and command them to lay down their Arms, but they knowing he was under a Force, one threw a Stone and struck the King on the Temple, of which he died three Days after, and though *Cortez* had some Thousands of *Flaxians*, who were Enemies to the *Mexicans*, to assist him, yet the *Spaniards* and *Indians* were forced to fly out of the City: the *Mexicans* cutting off their Bridges, made great Slaughter, the *Spaniards* losing much of their ill-got Treasure; and their Numbers increasing to 200000, they pursued them: But *Cortez* having the good Fortune to kill their Standard-bearer, the *Indians* forsook the Field. At length after three Months Siege, *Mexico* is taken and razed to the Ground, but soon after rebuilt with an hundred Thousand Houses.

After *Columbus* and other *Spaniards* had discovered this rich immense Country, other Nations were encouraged to take a more strict Survey of every Part, both North and South. The *Portuguese* first settled in *Brazil* and other Places. The *French* took Possession of *Canada* on the North, and several *English-Men* attempted to find a N. W. Passage to *China*.

OF AMERICA.

107

China, and the *East-Indies*; namely Sir *Schastias Cabot*, at the Charge of King *Henry VIIIth*, in 1498; after him Sir *Martin Trevisker*, in the Reign of *Q. Elizabeth*; then his Captains, *Davis*, *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Burrough*, *Pet*, *Jackman*, *Ellison*, *Boslin*, *Smith* and *Hudjon*, the Result of whose endeavours were the finding some cold Islands, to which they gave Names, and among others to *Hudsons Strait*, or *Bay*, which is in Possession of the *English* at this time, being a Incorporated Company, and driving a considerable Trade in Furs, which they Purchase of the Natives. Other *Englishmen* attempted to find out a N. E. Passage to *Cathay*, and with better Fortune found the Way to *Russia*, since that Time made a common Voyage, by passing down the River *Volga*, to the *Caspian Sea*. Sir *H. Cavendish*, and Sir *Francis Drake*, likewise circumnavigated the Globe, sailing thro' the Straights of *Magellane*, to the *Philippine-Islands* in the *East-Indies*, and so by the *Cape of Good Hope* to *England*; and many other Discoveries were made by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and others since; so that at this Time the King of *England* has several very considerable Plantations and Colonies on the W. Continent of *America*, contiguous to each other, containing about 1500 Miles from North to South; of which I shall give a brief Account, as well as of the several rich Islands of which the *English* are possist in this Part of the World. I shall begin with

NEW FOUND LAND, first discovered by *Schast. Cabot* for King *Henry VIIIth*, not thought at first to be an Island, but now found to be so, and as big as *England*, where are many Natives who pretend to believe in one God, that created all Things; but have many ridiculous Opinions concerning him, a *Sagamore* or a King telling the *English*, there was one God, one Son, one Mother, and one Sun, which were Four, and God was above them all. The *English* have some Towns here, about the great Bank, which is covered with Water when the Tyde flows, but is dry on the *ebb*, and on all sides 200 Fathoms deep, there is great Fishing by the *English* for Cod yearly, of which there are such prodigious Numbers, that one Man may catch 200 in an Hour's Time. The Lord *balbin* had a Patent for the Trade from King *James III*, 1621, erecting

OF AMERICA,

erecting a stately House and Fort at *Ferryland*, where he settled a Plantation, and lived there for some Time; his Son is Proprietor of this Island, as well as *Maryland*; I shall now give an Account of our Acquaintance on the Continent of *America*, and first of

NEW-ENGLAND. It was discovered with the other Northern Countries, by *Seb. Cabot* in 1497, and in 1534: *P. Anson*, and *M. Parlow*, were the first *Christians* who took Possession thereof. It lay long neglected; but in 1612, King James Ist, granted a Patent to several Adventurers, of this vast Tract of Land, from 40 to 48 Degrees North, yet little Improvement was made of these Grants, the Proprietors building only a few Huts for Fishermen on the Coast.

Soon after one *Mr. Robinson*, a *Puritan Minister*, or rather Independent Preacher, and several other English then at *London* in *Holland*, where, upon Arch-bishop *Laud's* imposing new Ceremonies upon the Clergy, they had withdrawn themselves, foreseeing they could not so well provide for their Posterity in a foreign Nation, petitioned King James Ist, for Liberty to settle themselves in those Parts of *America*, and had a Patent for some Territory near *Hudsons Bay*. They set sail from *Plymouth* in September, 1612. for the South Part of *New-England*, but were, through many Dangers, cast upon the South Cape of the *Massachusetts Bay*, called *Cape Cod*, from the Plenty of those Fish upon that Coast; and *Winter* approaching to fast, they had no Opportunity to remove, but the Goodness of the Soil, and the Kindness of the *Indians*, encouraged them to settle there, laying the Foundation of a new Colony, and named it *New-Plymouth*, the first Town they sailed from in *England*. From this Time, in a few Years *New-England* was much increased in Buildings, and began to furnish in all Manner of Accommodations, so that they have now near 30 Towns with English Names, of which *Boston* is the Chief. The Air is clear, healthful and agreeable to the English; it is well watered with Rivers, hath Variety of Beasts, wild and tame, several sorts of Fruits; the Commodities it yields are Rich Furs, *Elk*, *Linens*, *Wool*, *Iron*, *Wheat*, and other Grains, whereas they made to other English Plantations, and send great Quantities of Goods to *England*, from whence

the

OF AMERICA.

1897

they import all Sorts of Goods which they want, and are now grown one of the most thriving Colonies in the West-Indies.

NEW-YORK, so called from the Duke of York, before he came to the Crown, formerly named *New-Netherland*, being Part of that *New-England*, possess'd by the *Hollanders*, but the *English* having a prior Right since the Reign of King *James I*st, in 1664, King *Charles II*d, sent over Commissioners to reduce the Colonies into Bounds, who marching with 300 Red Coats to *Manhattan*, took from the *Dutch* their chief Town, called *New-Amsterdam*, now *New-York*, turning out the Governour with the Silver Leg, suffering all those that owned Subjection to the King of *England*, to enjoy their Houses and Estates as before, and in 13 Days after, the *English* got three Handsome Towns, three strong Forts, and a Castle without the Loss of one Man. The Climate is the same with *New-England*, and abounds with the like natural Productions, as well as with Corn, and other Grain. *Hudson's River* is on the North, toward the Head of which is seated, *New Albany*, a Place of great Trade with the *Indians*, having above 100 Miles good Corn Land, and other Accomodations.

NEW-JERSEY is Part of the Province of *New Albany*, hath 7 considerable Towns, and is plentifully supplied with lovely Springs, Revolvers, and Inland Rivers, it hath Store of Oak Timber, Masts for Ships, and other Wood, and produceth plentiful Crops of all Sorts of *English* Grain; is stored with wild Deer, Rabbits, and wild Fowl of all Sorts; all delicious Fruits, which come not to Perfect on in *England* are the natural Product of this Country; they have likewise Numbers of Horses, Cows, Hogs, and Sheep. Their Wh. F. Oyl, and Whale Fins, Bevers, Mouties, Racoons, and Martins Skins, they Transport for *England*. It is considerably peopled, and adjacent to *New-York* and *Long Island* both well peopled Colonies.

PENNSYLVANIA is a Member of that Part of *America*, which the King of *England's* Ancestors have taken care to preserve and improve; and King *Charles II*d, in Consideration of

of the Services of Sir *William Pen*, upon the Petition of his Son *William Pen Esq*; made him a Grant of that Tract of Land in *America*, which he named *Pennsylvania*; which in a few Years from a small Beginning is grown a populous and rich Plantation, inhabited principally by *Quakers*, & others likewise; there being Places of Worship for People of all Denominations. They abound with all Things, both Beasts, Sheep, Fowl, Horses, Deer, Fruits, Wheat, Barley, and all other Necessaries which their Neighbours enjoy.

They have begun and almost finished a large City, which is named *Philadelphia*, situate upon a Neck of Land between two navigable Rivers, *De la Ware*, and *Skskil*, whereby it hath two Harbours upon the Water, each a Mile, and two from River to River, where Ships may ride in good Anchorage, and this large Space of Ground increases daily, in building two strong Forts, with a Distance between each to prevent Fire.

Maryland is bounded on the North with *Pennsylvania*, East by *De la Ware* River, and the *Atlantic Ocean*. This Country is very plain and even, the Soil Rich and fertile, producing all Commodities found in the other Colonies. The chief Product of the *English* there, is *Tobacco*, 100 Tons of which in one Year been sent to *England*, and the Country is divided into 10 Counties, and granted by Charter to the Lord *Baltimore*, and his Heirs, with many other Liberties, and royal Prerogatives, and Jurisdictions, concerning Honours, coining Money, &c. paying yearly an Acknowledgment to the King and his Successors, viz. Indian Arrows at *Windser Castle* upon *Easter*. His Lordship and the Assembly have established Laws for the Security of the Inhabitants, with Toleration to all who profess Faith in *CHRIST*.

VERGINIA This Country, with the adjacent Coasts, was discovered by *Sebastian Coto*, for King *Henry the VIIIth*. It was first settled by Sir *Francis Drake*, and after ward by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who named it *Virginia* in honour of *Queen Elizabeth*; and after its first Discovery of almost great Pain and Expence, before it became a Settlement. It is situate on the

South of Maryland, and abounds in all Things common to the other Plantations; particularly Tobacco, which they sell in exchange for all other Commodities among one another; and which they purchase whatever Goods they have occasion for either from England or the neighbouring Islands. James River is of most account, where James Town is conveniently seated, navigable 150 Miles; in this Town are many neat and well built brick Houses, and the Courts of Judicature, with all publick Offices are kept here. The Country is govern'd by the Laws of England, and divided into many Counties, in which are held Petty-Courts every Month, from which there may be Appeals to the Quarter Sessions at James Town. They have Store of wild Beasts, as Lyons, Bears, Leopards, Tygers, Deers, Hares, Martins, Flying Squirrels; and for tame Beasts, Horses, Cows, Sheep, Goats, and Hogs.

CAROLIN 4. So called from K. Charles II^d, is that Part of Florida, joining to Virginia, between 29 and 36 Degrees North Latitude. The East is washed with the Atlantick Ocean, bounded on the West with the South Sea, and within these Bounds is contained the most fertile and pleasant Part of Florida, so much commended by the Spanish Authors. This Province was in 1662, by Letters Patent, granted by King Charles II^d, to the Earl of Clarendon, and several other Noblemen and Knights, who have there settled a Constitution of Government, whereby no Money can be raised without Consent of their Representatives in an Assembly, with innate Liberty of Conscience; this Country is in the same Climate and Temperature with Aleppo, Smyrna, Antioch in Judea, and the Province of Nankin, the richest in China, and will produce any Thing which those Parts do, were the Seeds brought and sowed; it is 600 Miles nearer the Sun than England, and so healthy, that several phisical and consumptive People who came from England have recovered, and others that have been afflicted with the Stone, have been quite cured, neither is the Great known in this Colony; they enjoy all the Blessings which we have mentioned in others, both for Health and Pleasure; and some others that they are not Partakers of. They have five

five Sorts of Grapes growing naturally in the Fields, which the French that are here say, will make very good Wine, & some of the Lords Proprietors have taken care to send them Plants of Rhenish, Canary, Chere, Malcat, Madera, and Spanish Grapes, and the Wine they have made already, is very good both for taste and colour; several Olive Trees are planted there, and thrive exceedingly. Tobacco grows very well, and Mulberry-trees to feed their Silk Worms, of which they make some Improvement: But their chief Produce is Rice, of which they make great Quantities of that which is very good, and load 14 or 15 large Ships every year for England, chiefly with Rice, and there is nothing wanting but People to inhabit this happy Country. These are all the Colonies the English have upon the West Continent of America which from Newfoundland North, is not 1500 Miles.



F I N I S.

